

**THE CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF THE ROLE OF THE MILITARY POLICE IN  
CRIME PREVENTION**

by

LEONARD XOBISO

Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree

MAGISTER TECHNOLOGIAE

In the subject  
POLICE PRACTICE

at the

UNIVERSITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUPERVISOR: Dr J.S. Horne  
CO-SUPERVISOR: Dr N.J.C. Olivier

**JANUARY 2018**

## DECLARATION

Student No.: 37216511

I declare that **“The critical analysis of the role of the military police in crime prevention”** is my own work and that all sources that I have used or quoted have been indicated and acknowledged by means of complete reference. This study has not been submitted before or examined in any other university.



Signed:

Leonard Xobiso

Student number: 37216511

11 September 2017

## PROOF OF EDITING



**Lötz Publishing**  
WE BELIEVE IN THE MAGIC OF BOOKS

25 June 2018

To whom it may concern,

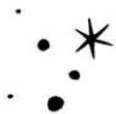
This is to certify that I have re-edited Leonard Xobiso's thesis titled

**THE CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF THE ROLE OF THE MILITARY POLICE IN  
CRIME PREVENTION**

checking the spelling, grammar, punctuation, sentence structure and for repetition. I have not formatted the dissertation so the student will need to do the formatting.

Yours sincerely,

Bridget Lötz



072 116 3718 [WHATSAPP + SMS ONLY] | [bridget@lotzpublishing.co.za](mailto:bridget@lotzpublishing.co.za) | [www.lotzpublishing.co.za](http://www.lotzpublishing.co.za)

## **PREFACE**

The purpose of this study “The critical analyses the role of the Military Police (MP) in crime prevention” is to empower the MP Officials on the latest knowledge that would enhance MP crime prevention. MPs form part of the police agencies within South Africa but in the South African National Defence Force (SANDF).

After 1994, crime patterns within the SANDF became more of criminal issues (theft of state and private property, housebreaking, and robbery) rather than disciplinary issues (AWOL, drunkenness, insulting of superior). This shift forced the MPs to make a dramatic change to crime prevention issues; this meant a change in the MPs daily crime prevention business. This research explains what crime prevention is, as it can be explained in varying ways.

This study explains the concept of the Military Police Agency Instruction 12/00 (MPAI 12/00) which is crime prevention guidelines and procedures for the entire Military Police Division (MPD). This document content articulates the implementation and application of the Military Police crime prevention.

The researcher further elucidates crime prevention by the MPs and provision of the Defence Act as the foundation of the MPs framework.

## **DEDICATION**

I sincerely dedicate this study to my late mother Zodwa Shezi, who passed away from this world of ours in 2008, without her I would not have made it to this educational level,

“Mama” your teachers are fruitful to me  
I love you and may your soul rest in peace

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

I would first like to give thanks to Almighty God, my ancestors for giving me strength throughout this study and express my appreciation to the following people who assisted me toward the completion of this study:

- Special thanks to my supervisor Dr J.S. Horne for her patience and support.
- Dr N.J.C Olivier, my co-supervisor, for his guidance and understanding.
- All the participants that I interviewed for their willingness to partake in the study.
- Special thanks to my beloved wife Sthembile Mhlongo, my three daughters Nkosazana, Zodwa and Nokukhanya, for their understanding and support under very difficult circumstances throughout the long nights of my study.
- My employer, MP Div for permitting me to conduct this study within MP stations in Gauteng Area.
- Special thanks to Nancy Ndonje who motivated and supported me in this study.
- Lastly my two sons Maqhawe and Lwazi for being always by my side encouraging me throughout this study.

## **ABSTRACT**

MPD is an entity within the SANDF responsible for maintaining law and order, prevent and combat crime, investigates criminal cases or alleged within the DoD. The role of the MPs has changed drastically over the past years especially after the integration of the non-statutory and statutory forces with all changes in crime growth increased in South Africa and affected the DoD. This led to the MPD shifting from disciplinary crime prevention issues to criminal crime prevention, as the basic mission of the police is to prevent crime and disorder.

MPs form part of the police agencies that are within South Africa, the uniqueness of the MPs they operating within the SANDF but they cannot be isolated from the complicated growing crime phenomenon that affects the whole South African community. As crime prevention is the catchphrase for all the police agencies and government departments, it is imperative for the MPs to align its crime prevention to the modern policing.

This study gives a comprehensive explanation of what crime prevention is, from the literature reviewed relevant to the study, with the aim to critically analyse the role of the MPs in crime prevention within the military proclaimed environment. The researcher collected data in the form of unstructured interviews, documents and literature. Collected data was transcribed; larger text was broken into smaller segments, coded and then selected into themes.

Participants had different views of the understanding of the meaning of crime prevention and different comprehension of the MPs crime prevention guideline and procedures. This analysis was done in order to determine the level of understanding of the role of the MPs, in crime prevention within the military proclaimed environment and how MPs can be effective and efficient within this environment.

## **KEY TERMS**

Crime prevention, crime, disciplinary issues, military police jurisdictions, military proclaimed area, military police crime prevention guidelines and procedures, military police crime prevention section, military police structures, patrols, proactive crime prevention.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>DECLARATION .....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>PROOF OF EDITING .....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>PREFACE .....</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>DEDICATION .....</b>	<b>iv</b>
<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS .....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>ABSTRACT .....</b>	<b>vi</b>
<b>KEY TERMS .....</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS .....</b>	<b>viii</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES .....</b>	<b>xiii</b>
<b>LIST OF FIGURES .....</b>	<b>xvi</b>
<b>ABBREVIATIONS .....</b>	<b>xvii</b>
<b>1. CHAPTER 1: GENERAL ORIENTATION .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 INTRODUCTION .....	1
1.2 RATIONALE OF RESEARCH (PROBLEM STATEMENT) .....	2
1.3 DEMARCATION OF THE STUDY .....	6
1.4 AIM OF THE RESEARCH .....	6
1.5 PURPOSE OF THE RESEARCH .....	6
1.6 RESEARCH OBJECTIVES .....	7
1.7 RESEARCH QUESTIONS .....	7
1.8 DEFINITION OF KEY TERMS .....	8
1.8.1 Community policing .....	8
1.8.2 Crime prevention .....	8
1.8.3 Military police .....	9
1.8.4 Military area .....	9
1.8.5 Policing .....	9
1.8.6 Role .....	9
1.9 METHODOLOGICAL FRAMEWORK OF THE STUDY .....	9
1.10 PHILOSOPHICAL WORLDVIEW OFFERED IN THE STUDY .....	10
1.11 RESEARCH APPROACH AND DESIGN .....	11
1.12 POPULATION .....	13
1.13 TARGET POPULATION .....	13
1.14 SAMPLING .....	14
1.15 DATA COLLECTION .....	16

1.15.1	Literature .....	17
1.15.2	Documents .....	18
1.15.3	Interviews .....	20
1.16	DATA ANALYSIS .....	22
1.16.1	Evaluation of the background information of participants .....	23
1.17	METHODS TAKEN TO ENSURE VALIDITY .....	24
1.17.1	Credibility .....	24
1.17.2	Transferability .....	25
1.18	METHODS TAKEN TO ENSURE RELIABILITY .....	25
1.18.1	Dependability .....	26
1.18.2	Conformability .....	27
1.19	ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS .....	27
1.20	RESEARCH STRUCTURE .....	29
<b>2</b>	<b>CHAPTER 2: CRIME PREVENTION .....</b>	<b>31</b>
2.1	INTRODUCTION .....	31
2.2	THE CONCEPT OF CRIME .....	32
2.3	CAUSES OF CRIME .....	35
2.3.1	Elements of crime .....	35
2.3.2	Factors that contributing to crime .....	36
2.4	THE NATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION STRATEGY (NCPS) .....	39
2.5	CRIME PREVENTION .....	41
2.5.1	The difference between crime prevention and crime control .....	47
2.5.2	Proactive crime prevention .....	50
2.5.3	Reactive crime prevention .....	52
2.6	THE PRINCIPLES OF CRIME PREVENTION .....	54
2.7	PRIMARY CRIME PREVENTION .....	56
2.8	SECONDARY CRIME PREVENTION .....	58
2.9	TERTIARY CRIME PREVENTION .....	60
2.10	ENVIRONMENTAL CRIME PREVENTION .....	62
2.10.1	Principles of environmental crime prevention .....	65
2.10.1.1	Architectural .....	65
2.10.1.2	Access control .....	65
2.10.1.3	Lighting .....	66

2.10.1.4	Property identification.....	66
2.10.1.5	Neighbourhood watch .....	67
2.10.1.6	Surveillance.....	67
2.10.1.7	Citizen Patrols .....	68
2.10.1.8	General deterrence .....	68
2.10.1.9	Public education.....	69
2.11	SOCIAL CRIME PREVENTION .....	72
2.12	DEVELOPMENTAL CRIME PREVENTION .....	75
2.13	THE ROLE PLAYERS IN CRIME PREVENTION .....	77
2.14	CRIME PREVENTION MECHANISM .....	79
2.15	SUMMARY .....	81
<b>3</b>	<b>CHAPTER 3: MILITARY POLICE AGENCY INSTRUCTION (MPAI 12/00).....</b>	<b>82</b>
3.1	INTRODUCTION.....	82
3.2	THE PURPOSE OF THE MPAI12/00.....	82
3.2.1	The mission statement of the Military Police Division regarding crime prevention .....	83
3.3	THE CONCEPT OF MILITARY POLICE AGENCY INSTRUCTION (MPAI 12/00) .....	86
3.3.1	Definition of the concept of the Military Police Agency Instruction .....	86
3.3.2	MPAI 12/00 overview of basic crime prevention strategies .....	89
3.3.3	Crime prevention according to the MPAI.....	93
3.4	THE CONSTITUTIONAL MANDATE OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL DEFENCE FORCE (SANDF) REGARDING CRIME PREVENTION.....	98
3.4.1	The relevance of MPAI 12/00 in terms of the Constitution .....	102
3.5	THE PRIMARY OBJECTIVES OF THE MILITARY POLICE REGARDING CRIME PREVENTION.....	107
3.6	THE LINK BETWEEN THE AIM OF THE MPAI 12/00 AND THAT OF THE NATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION STRATEGY .....	111
3.6.1	The alignment of the vision statement of the MPD to that of the NCPS regarding crime prevention.....	113
3.6.2	The involvement of the Military Police in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS .....	116

3.7	THE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE CONTENT OF THE MPAI 12/00 ON THE CURRENT DEMOCRATIC MODERN POLICING WITHIN THE SANDF .....	120
3.8	SUMMARY .....	127
<b>4</b>	<b>CHAPTER 4: CRIME PREVENTION BY THE MILITARY POLICE....</b>	<b>129</b>
4.1	INTRODUCTION.....	129
4.2	THE LEGISLATIVE MANDATORY FRAMEWORK OF THE MILITARY POLICE .....	129
4.2.1	Limitation of the powers and functions of the Military Police .....	131
4.3	THE ROLE OF THE MILITARY POLICE IN CRIME PREVENTION ...	134
4.3.1	The importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed areas.....	138
4.4	EFFECTIVE STRATEGIES AS THE BUILDING CAPACITY FOR THE MPD CRIME PREVENTION SECTION.....	143
4.4.1	Sector policing.....	147
4.4.2	The importance of community and stakeholder's engagement in crime prevention within the military proclaimed environment.....	155
4.5	EFFORT TO STRENGTHEN THE MILITARY POLICE CRIME PREVENTION FOR SUSTAINABILITY .....	162
4.6	MPO's PARTICIPATION IN SITUATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION ...	169
4.7	KNOWLEDGE FOR FURTHER PROGRESS .....	173
4.8	SUMMARY .....	177
<b>5</b>	<b>CHAPTER 5: FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS.....</b>	<b>178</b>
5.1	INTRODUCTION.....	178
5.2	FINDINGS .....	178
5.2.1	Primary findings .....	178
5.2.1.1	Research question one: What does crime prevention entail? .....	179
5.2.1.2	Research question two: What does MPAI 12/00 entail?' .....	184
5.2.1.3	Research question three: How should the Military Police prevent crime? .....	187
5.3	Secondary findings.....	195
5.4	RECOMMENDATIONS .....	203
5.4.1	Research question one: What does crime prevention entail? .....	203
5.4.2	Research question two: What does MPAI 12/00 entail? .....	204

5.4.3	Research question three: How should the Military Police prevent crime? .....	204
5.4.4	Recommendations for further research .....	206
5.5	CONCLUSION .....	207
<b>6.</b>	<b>LIST OF REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>208</b>
<b>7.</b>	<b>ANNEXURES.....</b>	<b>223</b>
6.1	ANNEXURE A: INTERVIEW SCHEDULE.....	223
6.2	ANNEXURE B: AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT A RESEARCH IN THE MILITARY POLICE DIVISION.....	231
6.3	ANNEXURE C: REQUEST TO CONDUCT INTERVIEWS .....	233
6.4	ANNEXURE D: UNISA ETHICAL CLEARANCE CERTIFICATE .....	235

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 2.1:	Frequency table for the meaning of crime .....	33
Table 2.2	Frequency table for the factors contributing to crime .....	38
Table 2.3:	Frequency table for the National Crime Prevention Strategy .....	40
Table 2.4:	Frequency table for the meaning of crime prevention.....	45
Table 2.5:	Frequency table for crime control .....	48
Table 2.6:	Frequency table for proactive crime prevention.....	50
Table 2.7:	Frequency table for reactive crime prevention.....	53
Table 2.8	Frequency table for the principles of crime prevention .....	54
Table 2.9:	Frequency table for the primary crime prevention .....	56
Table 2.10:	Frequency table for the meaning of secondary crime prevention .....	58
Table 2.11:	Frequency table on the meaning of tertiary crime prevention .....	61
Table 2.12:	Frequency table for the meaning of environmental crime prevention.....	62
Table 2.13:	Frequency table to explain the principles of environmental crime prevention .....	69
Table 2.14:	Frequency table for the effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public .....	71
Table 2.15:	Frequency table for the meaning of social crime prevention.....	73
Table 2.16:	Frequency table for the meaning of developmental crime prevention.....	76
Table 2.17:	Frequency table for who are the role players in crime prevention.....	79
Table 2.18:	Frequency table what crime prevention mechanism is .....	80
Table 3.1:	Frequency table for the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention .....	84
Table 3.2:	Frequency table for the meaning of MPAI 12/00 .....	87
Table 3.3:	MPAI 12/00 crime prevention strategies.....	89
Table 3.4:	Frequency table for what does MPAI 12/00 entail .....	90
Table 3.5:	Frequency table for the preventative measures.....	91
Table 3.6:	Frequency table for the MPAI 12/00 defining crime prevention .....	94
Table 3.7:	Frequency table for the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view.....	97
Table 3.8:	Frequency table for the Constitutional mandate of the SANDF .....	100
Table 3.9:	Frequency table for the relevance of MPAI 12/00 in term of the Constitution .....	102
Table 3.10:	Frequency table for the relevance of MPAI 12/00 in terms of (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(1)).....	105

Table 3.11:	Frequency table for primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention .....	109
Table 3.12:	Frequency table for the link between the aim of the MPAI 12/00 and that of the NCPS.....	111
Table 3.13:	Frequency table for the vision statement of the MP Division to that of the NCPS regarding crime prevention.....	114
Table 3.14:	Frequency table for the MP involvement in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS.....	116
Table 3.15:	Frequency table of how MPs are involved in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS.....	118
Table 3.16:	Frequency table for the effectiveness of the content of the MPAI 12/00 on the current democratic modern policing within the SANDF .....	122
Table 3.17:	Frequency table of the relevance of MP 12/00 to crime prevention .....	124
Table 3.18:	Frequency table of the extent of the MP Division involving crime prevention members to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised .....	126
Table 4.1:	Frequency table for the functions of the MP, according to the Defence Act .....	132
Table 4.2:	Frequency table MPs jurisdiction over civilians .....	133
Table 4.3:	Frequency table MPs role in crime prevention within military proclaimed areas.....	135
Table 4.4:	Frequency table of the considerations to revise MPs role in crime prevention .....	137
Table 4.5:	Frequency table for the importance of MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed area .....	139
Table 4.6:	Frequency table for the impact MPs current approach contribution in crime prevention .....	141
Table 4.7:	Frequency table for the definition of visible policing .....	144
Table 4.8:	Frequency table for the Military Police adapting visible policing .....	145
Table 4.9:	Frequency table for describing visible policing .....	146
Table 4.10:	Frequency table for the sector policing.....	149
Table 4.11:	Frequency table for MPs involvement in sector policing .....	150
Table 4.12:	Frequency table for the crime prevention strategy that can suit the MPs in the military proclaimed area .....	152
Table 4.13:	Frequency table for the importance of engaging the community and stakeholders in crime prevention within the proclaimed military environment .....	156
Table 4.14:	Frequency table for community involvement in crime prevention .....	158

Table 4.15:	Frequency table for interaction with the community.....	159
Table 4.16:	Frequency table for sustainability of the MPs crime prevention .....	163
Table 4.17:	Frequency table to strengthen the efforts of the MPs crime prevention ...	166
Table 4.18:	Frequency table for the status of MPs crime prevention equipment .....	167
Table 4.19:	Frequency table for crime prevention strategies used by MPs as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed area.....	168
Table 4.20:	Frequency table for the situational crime prevention .....	170
Table 4.21:	Frequency table for the involvement of the MPs in situational crime prevention .....	172
Table 4.22:	Frequency table for the SAPS influential training on the daily routine of MPs .....	174
Table 4.23:	Frequency table for the advantages of the SAPS-oriented training to the Military Police crime prevention section .....	176



## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1:	Map of the Northern Region Military Police Area Offices within Gauteng Area .....	14
Figure 2.1:	Retail crime, security and loss prevention .....	36
Figure 2.2:	The crime triangle .....	37
Figure 2.3:	Role players in the crime prevention within the crime triangle .....	78
Figure 3.1:	The produce for a successful strategy.....	121
Figure 4.1:	MP appointment card - front and back of card.....	131

## ABBREVIATIONS

ATM	Automatic Teller Machine
AWOL	Absent Without Leave
GBH	Grievous Bodily Harm
CCTV	Close Circuit Television
CMPR	Central Military Police Region
CPSCR	Crime Prevention Strategy Czech Republic
CPTED	Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design
DCP	Developmental Crime Prevention
DoD	Department of Defence
HQ	Head Quarter
ICPC	International Centre for the Crime Prevention
MDC	Military Discipline Code
MP	Military Police
MPD	Military Police Division
MPAI	Military Police Agency Instruction
MPO	Military Police Official
NCPS	National Crime Prevention Strategy
NDP	National Development Plan
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation
NMPR	Northern Military Police Region
PA	Proclaimed Area
PMA	Proclaimed Military Area
RSA	Republic of South Africa
SAA	South African Army
SAAF	South African Air Force
SAMHS	South Africa Military Health Services
SAN	South Africa Navy
SANDF	South African National Defence Force
SAPS	South African Police Service
SAQA	South African Qualifications Authority
SCF	Sector Crime Forum

SCP	Situational Crime Prevention
Sec	Section
SMPR	Southern Military Police Region
SWOT	Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats
UNODC	United Nations Office on Drug and Crime
WMPR	Western Military Police Region

## **CHAPTER 1**

### **GENERAL ORIENTATION**

#### **1.1 INTRODUCTION**

Military Police Division (MPD) is a Corps or an entity within the South African National Defence Force (SANDF). According to South Africa, (1996:sec. 199), the defence force is the only lawful military force in the Republic of South Africa (RSA). Furthermore, in terms of South Africa, (1996:sec. 200(2)), the primary functions of the defence force are to protect and defend the Republic, its territorial integrity and its people in accordance with the Constitution but considering the principles of international law which regulates the use of force.

Therefore, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is the only lawful military force in the Republic. The SANDF comprises of four arms of services, namely: The South African Army (SAA), the South African Navy (SAN), the South African Air Force (SAAF) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS). The SA Army is the largest arm of the service in the SANDF.

Within the SANDF, there is a policing component called the Military Police Division (MPD) which deals with internal matters as far as crime is concerned, appointed in terms of South Africa (2002:sec. 30(1)) which will be dealt with in chapter 4 of this study. Combating crime in the SANDF is the primary tasks of the Military Police within the military grounds as mentioned. The Military Police Agency Instruction 12/00 was written as the crime prevention guideline for the MPs members to follow when executing their functions (Military Police agency, 2001:i).

Military Police Agency (2001:2) defines crime as an act or omission prohibited by law, this act or omission has a negative impact on the ordinary way of life and existence of the community and the state. The Military Police is the only entity within the Department of Defence/SANDF that bears power and responsibilities to execute crime prevention (Military Police Agency, 2001:2). Military Police Agency (2001:2) elaborates that in the broader sense, crime prevention can subsequently be characterised as all strategies utilised by individuals, the community and the Military Police in order to avert and control criminal conduct and victimisation within the proclaimed military areas.

There are four regions within the MPD, and they are the Central Military Police Region (CMPR) located in Free State, Western Military Police Region (WMPR) located in North West Province, Southern Military Police Region (SMPR) located in Cape Town and Northern Region Military Police (NMPR) located in Gauteng. It must be noted that these four regions were not demarcated according to their geographical locations and as a result, they vary in size. Therefore, the NMPR is the biggest region amongst the four.

The Military Police within Gauteng Province needs to apply the principles of the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) (1996) within the boundaries of the military grounds to streamline with the vision of NCPS (1996:5). The NCPS states that 'South Africa shall be a society where its inhabitants can pursue their daily lives in peace and safety free from undue fear of crime and violence. It shall be a society in which the fundamental rights of the individual are effectively protected with the support and co-operation of fellow citizens (South Africa, 2015:9).'

The researcher understands that the MPs do not have jurisdiction over members of the public or civilian members that are appointed in terms of chapter 2 of the Public Service (Act 103 of 1994 as amended by Act 30 2007).

## **1.2 RATIONALE OF RESEARCH (PROBLEM STATEMENT)**

Wood and Ross-Kerr (2011:25) explain that the research is independent and the drive behind the research plan is derived from the research questions and ends with the complete product of what the researcher collected. It further explains that the research problem is the idea of the researcher that unveils the top of the study. The research problem that this study will focus on is the military police crime prevention in the proclaimed area (PA).

It is evident that crime within the Gauteng Province is rife, what is believed to be Military environment has turned out to be a hotspot of crime. Mabanga (2015:1) revealed that a soldier was apprehended for allegedly being illegally in possession of various weapons, ammunition and an undisclosed amount of cash in Thaba Tshwane military area. MP's may prevent crime and maintenance of law and order within their proclaimed military areas. Therefore, the people that live in Thaba

Tshwane are also affected by crime, and they deserve the same protection as any citizen of (South Africa, (2002:20(2)(b)(c)).

According to MPD Crime Statistics for the financial year 2014/15, they illustrated that crime within Gauteng, Pretoria military environment is rife, it is for this reason the researcher opted to embark on this study. Summary of cases reported as from 01 July 2014 to 30 September 2014; burglary at residential premises and burglary at business premises-housebreaking with intent steal and theft (commit a crime); housebreaking with the intention to commit an offence unknown to the prosecutor and attempted burglary at residential premises-housebreaking with the intention of committing a crime unknown to the prosecutor; house robbery and common robbery-robbery; possession of presumably stolen goods – failure to give account of possession of goods suspected of being stolen; possession of suspected stolen goods-receiving stolen property without reasonable cause; assault GBH-assault with the intent to do grievous bodily harm; intimidate-intimidation; escape or attempt to escape from custody after lawful arrest-escaping from lawful custody; malicious damage to private property and malicious damage to state property- malicious injury to property; using or taking article issued to or under control of another person- embezzlement; theft of property belonging to any institution of the SANDF, theft general state property, theft from motor vehicle (state property), theft general private property, shoplifting and theft from motor vehicle pp-theft; reckless and negligent driving without injuries and reckless and negligent driving with injuries-reckless or negligent driving; common assault-assault common; unlawful and intentionally setting fire to immovable property belonging to another – arson; driving vehicle under the influence of intoxicating liquor - driving under the influence of liquor; possession or use of dagga - unlawful possession or use of drug; illegal possession of ammunition - unlawful possession of ammunition; any offence against reputation - criminal defamation; dealing with dangerous/undesirable dependence-producing substance (dagga); dealing in drugs, defeating the course of justice - defeating or obstructing the course of justice.

Table 1.1 refers to the cases below reported as from 01 July 2014 to 30 September 2014.

**Table 1.1: Summary of cases reported 01 July 2014 to 30 September 2014**

<b>NATURE OF THE OFFENCE</b>	<b>JULY 2014</b>	<b>AUGUST 2014</b>	<b>SEPTEMBER 2014</b>
Burglary at residential premises	6	9	12
Attempted murder	1		1
Burglary at business premises	3		
Housebreaking with the intention to commit an offence unknown to the prosecutor		2	
House robbery	1		
Common robbery		1	2
Possession of presumably stolen goods		3	
Possession of suspected stolen goods		1	
Assault GBH	5	3	3
Attempted theft from a motor vehicle	1		
Intimidate	1		2
Escape or attempt to escape from custody after lawful arrest	1		
Malicious damage to private property			2
Using or taking article issued to or under control of another person	1		
Reckless and negligent driving without injuries	8	8	8
Theft of property belonging to any institution of the SANDF	4	1	1
Common assault	3	5	2
Driving vehicle while under the influence of intoxicating liquor	1	1	2
Unlawful & intentionally setting fire to immovable property belonging to another	1		
Arson		2	
Attempted burglary at residential premises		1	
Fraud	1	5	5

NATURE OF THE OFFENCE	JULY 2014	AUGUST 2014	SEPTEMBER 2014
Reckless and negligent driving with injuries	1	1	2
Possession or use of dagga	1	1	
Crimen injuria	1	1	1
Perjury			
Theft general state property	8	3	6
Illegal possession of ammunition		1	
Theft of motor vehicle (state property)	2		
Theft general private property	3	9	4
Robbery with firearm		1	
Shoplifting		1	
Malicious damage to state property	1	2	
Any offence against the reputation	1		
Theft from motor vehicle pp		1	1
Dealing with a dangerous/undesirable dependence-producing substance (dagga)	1		
Defeating the course of justice	4		
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>61</b>	<b>64</b>	<b>58</b>

(Source: Military Police Division Crime Report Financial Year, 2014/2015)

Below is the display of cases reported at each MP Area Office. Refer to Table 1.2 below for cases reported at the MP station.

**Table 1.2: Cases reported at each MP Station: 01 July 2014 to 30 September 2014**

CASES REPORTED			
Region	Province	Military Police Units	Total per month
Northern Military Police	Gauteng-Pretoria	• Thaba Tshwane MP	73
		• AFB Waterkloof MP	45
		• Dequar MP	33
		• Wonderboom MP	42

(Source: Military Police Division Crime Report Financial Year, 2014/2015)



### **1.3 DEMARCATION OF THE STUDY**

For this study, the researcher scrutinised the (Military Police Agency, 2001:01) which is the crime prevention guidelines and procedures for MPD. The MPD is divided into four MP Regional Headquarters in South Africa, Northern, Western, Central and Southern MP Region (South Africa, 2013:96). Since the researcher is based in Pretoria, Gauteng, it would have been impossible to interview all the MP crime prevention section members throughout South Africa, due to time and budget constraints. Therefore, the researcher limited this study to the NMPR located in Pretoria, Gauteng, which consists of four MP stations. This study will be limited to the sample of all the crime prevention section members within the MP stations of NMPR located in Pretoria, Gauteng.

### **1.4 AIM OF THE RESEARCH**

Denscombe (2012:20) points out that research should not guarantee the results that cannot be conveyed, but that the aims should steer the direction of the research and should offer the objectives the researcher hopes to achieve (Denscombe, 2012:49). Fouché and De Vos (in De Vos, Strydom, Fouché & Delport, 2011:94) elucidate that the term aim, goal, purpose and objective are often utilised by researchers as equivalent words of one another. They further highlight that the aim, goal or purpose can be seen as the fantasy (something one plan to accomplish). Meanwhile, the objective refers to the process one has to undergo within a certain period to reach the dream. For this study, the researcher had accordingly referred to the research aim as the dream that the researcher wished to achieve.

Therefore, this research aims to determine how the military police should prevent crime within the proclaimed military area (PMA).

### **1.5 PURPOSE OF THE RESEARCH**

Babbie (2010:92) explains that a number of studies will cover the three essential elements of the purpose when conducting research namely exploration, description and explanation. The purpose of this research with its array of disciplines and styles of research as derived from the description of (Denscombe, 2010:10).

- Evaluation of the situation– The researcher evaluated how crime prevention methods are being applied by the MPO when conducting crime prevention within the context of Military Discipline Code (MPAI) 12/00 with the intention to establish their strengths and weakness with the perspective of closing gaps for improvement. The White paper on Safety and Security (1998, the changing policy environment, 1) confirms that NCPS is projected as a strong multi-agency approach to crime prevention,
- Exploration– The researcher explored a new field of crime prevention and comprehensively use of literature study and interviews to uncover more information and report back on what on the research findings,
- Applied research– The research applied the NCPS to suggest a suitable practice for the subject for their role to effective and efficient in crime prevention,
- Empowerment– The researcher empowered the MP Officials by uncovering the latest knowledge that would enhance crime prevention in the MP context within their proclaimed area to be effective and efficient.

## **1.6 RESEARCH OBJECTIVES**

According to Fouché and Delport (in De Vos et al., 2011:108), the objectives of the research elucidate the specific issues that the researcher intends to examine and should accordingly be stated and specific.

- To determine what crime prevention entails.
- To determine what MPAI 12/00 entails as far as crime prevention is concerned.
- Investigate how the military police should prevent crime.

## **1.7 RESEARCH QUESTIONS**

According to Jesson, Matheson and Lacey (2011:18), research question affords the firm base for the whole of the literature review of a research study and suggest that defining the research question is a vital step that points the way for the research investigation. Denscombe (2010:15) believes that the research questions should point out exactly how the research will be put into practice. Research questions should stipulate what factors and what relationships would be investigated to provide data that can be used to address the research aim (Denscombe, 2012:82). Denscombe (2012:82) cautions that research question should not be mixed up with

questions that appear on the interview schedules. The following research questions will be answered in this research:

- What does crime prevention entail?
- What does MPAI 12/00 entail as far as crime prevention is concerned?
- How should the military police prevent crime?

## **1.8 DEFINITION OF KEY TERMS**

It is imperative to carefully define the meaning of each key theoretical concept to steer clear ambiguous analysis with unknown assumptions (Beach, 2012:224). Wales (2014) defines the key term signalled to the reader that the researcher knows what he is talking about, furthermore by giving one meaning for the key term ensures one common understanding between the researcher and the reader to avoid misconception.

### **1.8.1 Community policing**

Crewe, le Roux, Mouton, Reynecke, Schoeman, Schutte and Smit (2001:68) are quoted in Policy framework for Community Policing (1997) defining community policing as the emphasis on the establishment of the partnership between the police and the community. This philosophy responds to the needs of the community through police management styles, operation strategies and a problem-solving approach. It is based on objectives of the SAPS namely:

- The maintenance of public order.
- The prevention, combating and investigation of crime.

The provision of protection and security to the inhabitants of the Republic and their property and uphold and enforce the law (Crewe et al., 2001:90).

### **1.8.2 Crime prevention**

Crime Prevention can be seen as an attempt to eliminate criminal either (Crewe, et al., 2001:90):

- Before the crime is committed;
- Before any further action takes place; or

- Where crime prevention fails to prevent the occurrence of crime, crime prevention can be applied as a strategy to control crime, in the sense that discourages criminal activities not to increase.

### **1.8.3 Military police**

According to (South Africa, 2002:sec. 30(1)), military police is any member of the Defence Force appointed by the Chief of Defence Force to perform police functions within any PMA, and such member is then issued with prescribed military police identification card.

### **1.8.4 Military area**

South Africa (2002:sec. 50(5)) stipulates that a military area is an area that may be restricted to unauthorised persons.

### **1.8.5 Policing**

Reiner (1997) as cited in Weber (2013:31) defines policing “as a set of police activities directed at keeping the security of a particular community in order.” An example is enforcing law and order, crime prevention and investigation.

### **1.8.6 Role**

According to Oxford Advanced Learners Dictionary (2010:1282), role is defined as the degree of involvement of a person or thing in a situation.

## **1.9 METHODOLOGICAL FRAMEWORK OF THE STUDY**

A conceptual framework was used by the researcher in this study to critically analyse the role of the MP in crime prevention within their proclaimed military environment within Gauteng area. The proclaimed military environments are experiencing a high rate of theft of state equipment's, and now MPs got a challenge to eliminate crime through MPD instruction books. According to Kumar (2014:57), the research problem is the solid start line for the conceptual framework derived from theoretical frame based on the selected part that forms the foundation of the researcher's enquiry.

Ravitch and Riggan (2012:2) believe that working on the research questions, planning, acquiring own knowledge on the topic the researcher has already

constructed a conceptual framework. Ravitch and Riggan (2012:2) elaborate further that the experience and expertise of the participant empower the knowledge of the researcher. Therefore, for vast ideas and knowledge to enhance this study, the researcher interviews twenty crime prevention members within the MP stations in Gauteng area with the field experience of more than ten years.

Ravitch and Riggan (2012:7) substantiate that the importance and accuracy of the logical study is the drive to influence the participants. The researcher did a thorough data collection and analysis of both experiential knowledge and prior theory to construct the conceptual framework. The following section will offer the worldview of the study as selected by the researcher.

#### **1.10 PHILOSOPHICAL WORLDVIEW OFFERED IN THE STUDY**

The philosophical worldview that has been offered in the study was a constructivist worldview. The researcher opted to explore the philosophical worldview in order to apply knowledge so as to discover the meaning and understanding of the world in which the researcher lives and work on it, by critical analysis of the role of the MP in crime prevention within their military environment. Worldview is the mental thinking of effective brainstorming used by people to understand social landscape to discover the means to achieve any objectives they pursue (Hart, 2010:2).

Braun and Clarke (2013:31) state that the world is perceived to be linked to some sort of social, cultural contexts, add that social, cultural, moral, ideological and political are viewed as manmade knowledge. Therefore, they are constructed; they conclude that knowledge is the product of how the society comes to know and to understand the world. Schlitz, Vieten and Miller (2010:19) substantiate that a worldview comprises of a complete model of reality, a combination of beliefs, assumption, attitude, values and ideas.

The researcher used epistemology in this study; epistemology is acquiring of knowledge, and the understanding of reality so that the researcher can be in the more clear position to make an effective judgement between the truth and opinion (Brownlee, Schraw & Beltheser, 2012:298). Burr (2003) as cited in Harper (2011:3) concurs with the above explanation of epistemology and further elaborates that

epistemology is a process, systematic investigation to enhance knowledge for the researcher to reach the findings.

Constructivist paradigms as the assumption were relevant in this study. Constructivist paradigms mean that human beings actively construct their own subjective representation of objective reality, mean that people like to reflect on their past experience knowledge of the world, in order to understand reality so that they can link it to the new information (Levers, 2013:3).

Nawz (2012:4) is of the view that the inclusion of the participants in the study is relevant because where there are questions, a unique correct answer is vested within each participant. Interviews were to be conducted during this study.

- Sample "A"- Thaba Tshwane MP 6 out of 12 crime prevention members were interviewed;
- Sample "B"- AFB Waterkloof MP 4 out of 8 crime prevention members were interviewed;
- Sample "C"- Dequar MP 2 out of 4 crime prevention members were interviewed; and
- Sample "D"- Wonderboom MP 8 out of 16 crime prevention members were interviewed.

The participants were the partners of this study; therefore, the tool that links the participants to the research process in all phase was constructivism. The participants were the source of information as the researcher relied on participants past experience knowledge of how they lived and worked (Creswell, 2007 as cited in De Vos, Strydom, Fouche & Delport, 2011:7).

### **1.11 RESEARCH APPROACH AND DESIGN**

According to Blake (2010:15), research design incorporates all the decisions of the action plan that are required to justify the sequence in which the research will unfold and as well to achieve control. Maxwell (2013:4) views that research design can be presented in the form of the model in this study:

- Goal– the value of the study investigated and the influence outcomes;

- Conceptual framework– information needed to clarify the study and justification of the result of the problem through research questions;
- Research questions– the knowledge gained after research questions were addressed; and
- Methods– outline the research in particular to the approach, data collection and analysis as well as the coverage of these four elements of the design.

Creswell (2007) as cited in De Vos et al. (2011:312), confirms five research designs as narrative biography, ethnography, case study, phenomenology and grounded theory. Phenomenology suits this study because in-depth interviews were conducted on the subjects who are experienced. Phenomenology is based on individual experiences, perception and beliefs (Guest, Namey & Mitchell, 2013:8).

Sheperis, Young and Daniels (2010:136) state that there is a close link between an individual and the world he or she lives and further adds that the world of the subject must be entered by the researcher to know a true reflection of the world from subject's point of view. Sheperis et al. (2010:136), explain that the researcher ought to put himself/herself into the shoes of the participant's so it will be easy to understand the past experience of the participant.

The researcher used qualitative research approach in this study. Qualitative is described by Creswell (2014:187) as an approach for exploring and understanding the meaning individuals or groups ascribe to a social or human problem. The data collection of qualitative research is derived from using words and flexible to analyse in any way, a contrast to quantitative research data, which is in the form of numbers and statistical techniques, is used for analysis (Braun & Clarke, 2013:3). Maxwell (2013:4) states that interpretive and material beliefs that make the world visible is the qualitative research; this world belief is transformed into representations, which include interviews.

Creswell (2014:185) explains the characteristics of the qualitative research as follows:

- Natural setting – Data is gathered from the field through interviews using the subject experience to clarify the problem question of the study;

- Key instrument – Researcher collected data by researching documents, observation and interviews;
- Various sources of data – Numerous form of data collection is used such as conversation, recordings, interviews rather than using a single way of collecting information;
- Reflexivity – Interpretation of the study depends on culture and experiences; and
- Emergent design – The study is flexible to changes.

### **1.12 POPULATION**

Population creates boundaries in the study unit; it means individuals in the universe who possess specific characteristics (De Vos et al., 2011:223). Loseke (2013:99) defines population as used in research studies as the entire collection of people, things or behaviour from which the researcher is likely to conclude and out of the population, the sample is selected. The entire MPD constitute the population. The ideal population for this study should have been all the crime prevention officials in the entire MPD, which has about two hundred crime prevention Military Police officials, due to financial constraints the researcher has foreseen that it would be impossible to interview the entire population of the large number scattered throughout South Africa.

### **1.13 TARGET POPULATION**

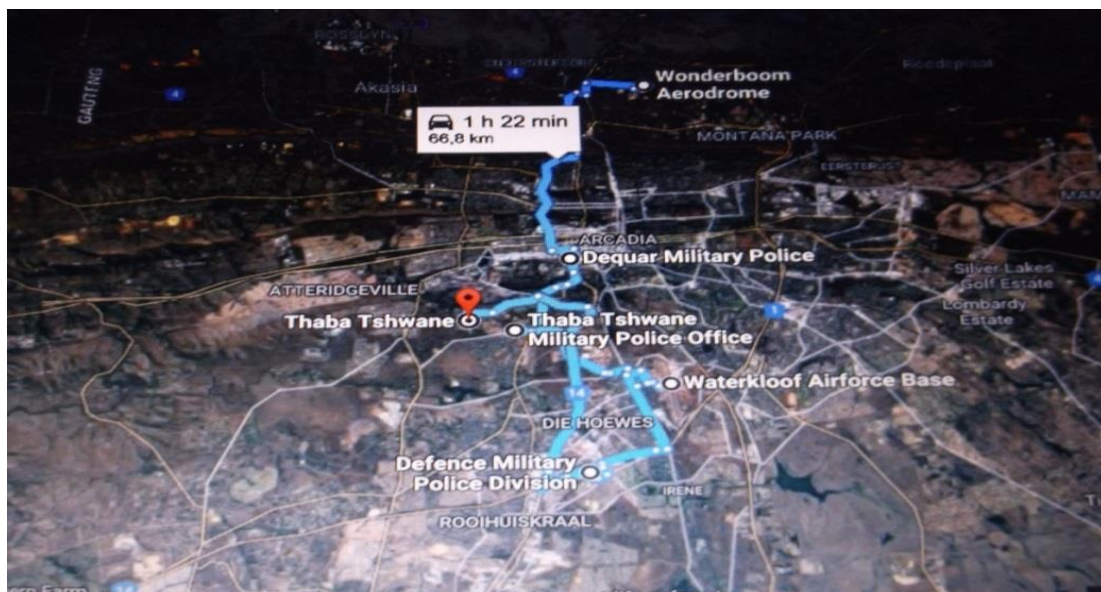
Daniel (2012:9) defines target population as the portion of the population that is the subject of research interest from which the researcher desires to apply the finding of the study. Nelson, Groom and Potrac (2014:150) refer to the target population as the size of the group from which the researcher selects a sample of a subject for the study and further highlighted that the size relevance is vital for the research outcomes.

Ritchie, Lewis, McNaughton and Ormston (2014:57), states that study population must be geographically grouped, meaning that the clustering of the subjects must have a common location for easy accessibility during the interviews, to save time and money. Smaller scale study population allows in-depth exploration as well as enough time for both the participant and researcher to reflect on the interview.



After the researcher carefully viewed the MPD Crime Cases Reported Statistics (Table 1.1), which consisted of all crime returns from all Military Police Regions, the researcher then decided to select Northern Military Police Region as the target population for this study. Northern Military Police Region in Gauteng comprises of four Area Offices (refer to Figure 1.1): Thaba Tshwane MP Station, Airforce Base Waterkloof MP, Dequar MP and Wonderboom MP within Gauteng Province with crime prevention section in each Area Office.

The researcher's selection of Northern Military Police Region is due to high crime statistics level experienced by this Region located at Thaba Tshwane in Pretoria, which forms part of Gauteng Province. The researcher thought that this target population knowledge, role and experience in this study could shed light on different aspects of the research questions (Ritchie et al., 2014:57).



**Figure 1.1: Map of the Northern Region Military Police Area Offices within Gauteng Area**  
(Source: Google Map Data 18 September 2015)

## 1.14 SAMPLING

Guest et al. (2013:41), define sampling as the process of the selecting only a sample that is a subset from a defined population as participants into a study, further underlined the two major categories of sampling as probability and non-probability sampling.

There are two different sampling designs: probability sampling and non-probability sampling. Probability sampling uses a random selection of the subject, and each member of the study population has the same chance of being included in the sample and known probability of being chosen. Non-probability sampling individual in the study population does not have the same chance of being included in the sample (Cottrell & McKenzie, 2011:27). In this study, the researcher used probability sampling because it enhances representativeness of the sample.

Probability sampling consists of a random sample. The participants were selected using a random sample. According to Gray (2009:148), random sample ensures that the selection of each in the study population has the same opportunity of being chosen. There are four kinds of random sampling techniques: simple random sampling, systematic sampling, stratified random sampling and cluster sample (Gray, 2009:51). In this study, the researcher used simple random sampling. Simple random sampling ensures that everyone has the chance to be selected and to eliminate opportunities for bias (Du Plooy-Cilliers, Davis & Bezuidenhout, 2014:138).

The researcher for the section of the participants obtained a name list of crime prevention section members from the four Area Offices; Thaba Tshwane MP with twelve (12) members, AFB Waterkloof MP with eight (8) members, Dequer MP with four (4) members and Wonderboom with sixteen members. The total number of the Military Police Officials, crime prevention members from the above area offices amounted to 40 members. To ensure equal advantage when selecting a representative of area offices to be included in the study, 50% of crime prevention members were selected from each MP area office. A total number of 20 members were selected to take part in the study. Sharma (2014:227) explains that the sample size needs to be reasonable as hundreds of interviews would be unmanageable to conduct and analyse. The scope and the focus of the study would influence the sample size, the wider the range – the larger the sample, in phenomenology the research sample should be 20-30 participants with a distinctive experience that can best contribute to the study (Sharma, 2014:227). Table 1.3 below illustrates target population of the study:

**Table 1.3: Target population of the study**

Name of the sample	Name of the Area Office	Manpower strength	50% of personnel involved in the study
Sample A	Thaba Tshwane MP	12	6
Sample B	AFB Waterkloof MP	8	4
Sample C	Dequar MP	4	2
Sample D	Wonderboom MP	16	8
		Total of 40 Crime prevention members from all Area Offices	Total 20 Crime prevention members

(Compiled by the researcher)

- Thaba Tshwane MP is sample “A” with 12 members; unique numbers were assigned to the names of the members thrown in a hat then steered six unique numbers allocated to members were drawn.
- AFB Waterkloof MP is sample “B” with eight (8) members; unique numbers were assigned to the names of the members thrown in a hat then steered four unique numbers allocated to members were drawn.
- Dequar MP is sample “C” with four (4) members; unique numbers were assigned to the names of the members thrown in a hat then steered two unique numbers allocated to members were drawn.
- Wonderboom MP is sample “D” with 16 members; unique numbers were assigned to the names of the members thrown in a hat then steered eight unique numbers allocated to members were drawn.

### **1.15 DATA COLLECTION**

According to Bernard and Ryan (2010:21), data collection techniques are fixing of the image puzzle and the bringing of words together to suit the research goals. It is imperative for the researcher to know from the outset the research goal so that it is easy to choose the methods for data collecting and data analysis. Primary sources and secondary sources were used in this research to answer the research questions.

Gravetter and Forzano (2012:49) define primary sources as the first occurrence of a piece of work for an example published sources, such as reports, local government publications-white papers, planning documents, unpublished

manuscripts-letters, memos and committee minutes; all these sources are written by the individual(s) conducted the research or observation.

Secondary sources are descriptions or summaries of another person who never participated in the research include books and journals that constitute the subsequent publications of primary literature. These publications are easier to locate than primary literature, and both primary sources and secondary source are playing a vital part in the literature search process (Gravetter & Forzano, 2012:49).

Triangulation checks validation of the different methods used while collecting data confirming and improving clarity (Ritchie et al., 2014:358). According to Gray (2014:692), triangulation is the use of multiple methods to improve the reliability of data when gathering data. To answer the research questions in this study, the researcher used numerous instruments, to collect data as to obtain different viewpoints:

- Literature
- Documents
- Semi-structured interviews

#### **1.15.1 Literature**

Concerning this study, the researcher searched for previously conducted studies regarding the military police crime prevention and found that there was no topic conducted base on the study. A literature review is defined as the process of reviewing the literature, which supports the researcher in understanding the subject area better and thus avails the researcher to conceptualise the research problem (Kumar, 2014:49).

The researcher found literature, such as a dissertation on “Prevention of theft of official vehicle of the SANDF in the Gauteng Province” (Mathebula, 2014); the journal article “The role of the SANDF in policing” (Montesh & Basdeo, 2012), as well as “The professional bulleting of the military police corps” (US Military Police, 2004) which were consulted but none of these sources contained literature on the same topic.

Since there was no relevance on the above literature to this study, the researcher further consulted UNISA library catalogues, as well as google scholar books, which assisted to enlighten the definition of the concept of what crime prevention entails, and identify problems remaining to be solved by the study conducted and provided new insights. Gray (2014:10) assists the researcher to find further relevant knowledge by giving the list of sources at the end of each chapter. Kumar (2014:49) confirms that when reviewing the literature, the researcher uncovers what has been reviewed, findings, gaps identified and suggestions for further research. The researcher visited internet sites to retrieve information.

### **1.15.2 Documents**

Goodwin (2012:205) explains documents study as the series whereby the researcher is utilising documents to examine and discover information about individuals, things and organisations. According to De Vos et al. (2011:376), document study is the study that entails examining of existing documents, refers to recorded or written material including documents that are not written with the purpose to be used for research. Analytically focused methods entail developing a plan for gathering information that is closely connected for the purpose required to answer the research questions, while Kumar (2014:49) sees literature in the research to be conducted as providing context and justification.

Flick (2014:355) states that the following questions should be posed before using documents as data:

- The researcher should ask himself who produced this document;
- For which purpose; and
- Who is meant to access it?

Furthermore, documents should be seen as means of communication. For this study, the researcher analysed the following documents:

- Military Police Agency instruction (MPAI) 12/00 book, which is the guide that discharges daily crime prevention activities for the entire MPD. The researcher evaluated the strength and weakness of the MPAI to be able to identify gaps within the context of crime prevention. The information contained in this

document after being analysed, assisted the researcher in answering research question number two of this study that read as “What does MPAI 12/00 entail as far as crime prevention is concerned?”

- Local newspapers reporting issues of crime within military environment within Northern Military Police Region serve as the source of confirmation for the need to conduct the study. The information contained in this document after being analysed, assisted the researcher in answering research question number one of this study that read as “What does crime preventions entails?”
- Official Military Police Cases Report helped the researcher to be able to select them for this study. The information contained in this document after being analysed, assisted the researcher in answering research question number three of this study that read, as “How the military police should prevent crime?”
- South Africa (2002) assisted the researcher in analysing the appointment of Military Police Officials. The information contained in this document was essential in answering research question number three of this study that read as “How the military police should prevent crime?”
- NCPS (1996) was analysed with the intention to realign the military police crime prevention. This document was vital to answer research question number two of this study that read as “What does MPAI 12/00 entails as far as crime prevention is concerned?”
- White Paper on Safety and Security (1998) was analysed with the intention to realign the military police framework within the proclaimed area. The information contained in this document after being analysed, assisted the researcher in answering research question number two of this study that read as “What does MPAI 12/00 entails as far as crime prevention is concerned?”
- Books assisted the researcher with a different viewpoint. The research question to be answered by this document is research question number two of this study that read as “What does MPAI 12/00 entails as far as crime prevention is concerned?” Questions that the researcher seeks to answer with the books is the link between the aim of MPAI 12/00 and the NCPS and whether the MPAI 12/00 is in line with the NCPS (Crawford, 2013:11).

### 1.15.3 Interviews

According to Muratovski (2016:61), the term interview comprises of two parties, the interviewer and interviewee face to face, telephonically or online. The interview is all about asking questions for the interviewer to have a meaningful world of interviewee views and knowledge of the topic in question. There are five types of interviews to choose from when conducting interviews (Muratovski, 2016:61).

- Structured interviews- Are used to collect data for quantitative analysis, and use pre-prepared questionnaire and standardised questions.
- Semi-structured interviews- Are used in the qualitative analysis, the researcher has a set of predetermined questions but may include additional questions that were not anticipated at the start of the interview, as new issues emerge, semi-structured interviews allows for probing views (De Vos et al., 2011:351).
- Unstructured interviews- Allows the researcher and participant to explore an issue as it extends and formalises conversation.
- In-depth interviews- Tend to collect data for qualitative analysis, used to understand the participant's point of view.
- Focus group interviews- Based on the participant's subjective responses to a known situation in which they have been involved in, how they feel or think.

In this study, the researcher used the semi-structured interview. Semi-structured interviews are used to gain a full view of the subjects' experience over a particular issue (De Vos et al., 2011:351). In a qualitative research study, semi-structured interviews are mostly used (Gray, 2014:385). Predetermined questions with both open-ended and closed-ended are prepared in advance, which allowed probing questions to get clarification. Subjects are allowed to expand on probe question and opinions to give a fuller picture of the issue being investigated and the researcher record the answers (Gray. 2014:385).

The researcher conducted face-to-face interviews with the participants. Creswell (2014:8) believes that face-to-face interviewing can make individuals express their real-life experience and attached meaning evidence to it, which can lead to probing question. The strong point of one-on-one interviews is that it has effective means to

get a large amount of data quickly and obtaining depth in data (De Vos et al., 2011:360).

Interview entails discussion of the topic on specific questions being asked and the responses given to answer the research question and data generated gives the insight of the participant's viewpoint (Goodwin, 2012:205). A fundamental and productive method of qualitative data is interviews; therefore, for a productive interview the researcher followed the following guidelines (Silverman, 2011:79):

- In advance, the researcher formulated an interview schedule. An interview schedule is a list of predetermined questions by the researcher based on the research problem and research questions. The interview schedule filed as (Annexure "A").
- The researcher also obtained written permission from Chief Defence Intelligence (Annexure "B").
- Before the dates of the interviews, permission was obtained from the NMPR HQ Officer Commanding (Annexure "C").
- All interviews were conducted at the offices of participants' Military Police Area Offices. The researcher went to interview the participants.
- Interviews were prearranged time and place. The researcher obtained permission from the participants to be interviewed through the participant's signature on the consent form.
- Interviews with the participants were conducted face to face.
- The researcher recorded interviews, with the consent of all participants.
- The researcher used Olympus note coded DP-211 to record the interviews.
- Opened questions and closed questions were asked as to allow flexibility in the research.
- Each participant was interviewed individually for approximately one hour twenty minutes, which is for probing question.
- The content statements of the participants are safely stored on the laptop in a folder, which is protected by a password.

The researcher used the pilot study to test and evaluate the feasibility of the interview schedule, one interview schedule with the same questions was used to



interview three Military Police School crime prevention Instructors who were not part of the study. These Instructors are trained as crime prevention facilitators. Wimmer and Dommick (2011:143) define pilot study as the small study conducted in advance gathering of information for investigation; it is the test for the techniques and strategies to be utilised in a larger study, information generated to be used for sample size. Feasibility was checked for how long does the interview take; time spent will be measured, this was done on different subjects that were not used for the target of the main study. As the researcher used a semi-structured interview that accommodates probing question, similar questions were asked to participants, where questions were not clear, a cross-checking question was allowed, and clarity was given by the researcher (De Vos et al., 2011:394-395).

## **1.16 DATA ANALYSIS**

According to Peck and Devore (2012:6), the process of data analysis can be regarded as a sequence of steps ranging from planning, data collection to make informed conclusions based on the results of analysed data. The researcher when doing data analysis followed the sequence of six steps as recommended by Peck and Devore (2012:6) when:

- A proper understanding of the research problem- The researcher read numerous literature to generate data that would be valid and reliable after clearly defined the purpose of the research question.
- Data required to answer the questions of interest- Literature was done to capacitates the knowledge of the researcher.
- Understanding how data was collected and for what purpose so that results are understood, and judgement can be acceptable- The researcher conducted interviews.
- Preliminary suitable methods for data analysis were selected for further analysis- The read transcripts thereafter-organised data according to relevant codes. Themes emerged which were a link to questions that would give answers to the research questions.
- Selecting the method- The researcher used thematic analysis to analyse data.
- Outcomes of the data analysed- The outcomes of the data analysed, assisted the researcher with valid and reliable findings and recommendations.

The researcher used thematic analysis to analyse data in this study, guideline, as explained by Hennink (2014:90), were followed:

- Familiarisation– The researcher listened analytically to the voice recorder a number of times with the intention to identify common ideas; data was then organised on the computer to establish a database. Rapleyl (2008) as cited in De Vos et al. (2011:381), with document analysis and literature the researcher must generate an archive, note all the courses of action, compare findings with the previous work.
- Segmental– Large text was broken down into smaller segments, relevant data was organised to each other as raised by participants to define the segment. Cassell (2015:77) elaborates that data analysis is the system for breaking down data that depends specifically on thematically arranging textual data and following the template of codes.
- Sorting– The researcher used the participants' analysis own expression to illustrate issues. Flick (2014:48) confirms that selected themes in the data are meaningful to address relevant research questions and feasibly making ideas to link together. Thematic analysis is counted in the recorded word. The issues coded became themes; themes were retrieved, amalgamated, parted and grouped to identify a strong distinction between themes.
- Summary– The researcher completed a matrix and where needed data was reduced, and even themes were removed.

#### **1.16.1 Evaluation of the background information of participants**

All the participants are members of the MPD, working as crime prevention officials at Thaba Tshwane MP Station, Airforce Waterkloof, Dequar MP and Wonderboom MP within Gauteng Province. The participants have more than ten years' experience in crime prevention; some participants are officers while others are non-commissioned officers. Eighty percent of these participants were trained on the old military police basic crime prevention training, while twenty percent was trained on the SAPS Learning Area 5: Crime Prevention.

## **1.17 METHODS TAKEN TO ENSURE VALIDITY**

According to Denscombe (2010:143), validity entails the correctness of the questions asked, the data collected, and explanations presented. Furthermore, the term validity generally relates to methods and techniques used to collect the data with regard to the quality of data, the explanation and the confidence that can be agreed upon that the data is real or true. To ensure validity semi-structured interviews, the researcher made use of interview schedule.

To ensure validity, the researcher followed two validation strategies as proposed by (Creswell, 2013:250-253).

Prolonged engagement–Interviews were held at the participants' Area Offices; interviews were tape recorded to ensure that they were transcribed word for word, checking for misinformation that could lead to distortion, questions were repeated over and over to ensure that the participants understood what was asked, so as to give accurate feedback on the question, the answers were verified to check that it was not ambiguous from both the researcher and participants. Estimation time for the interview was 40 minutes, but some interviews went over the time as trust was developed by the participants.

According to Major and Savin-Baden (2010:76), anything to be declared valid or validated, it must be seen as representing some truth. Participants were given time to reflect on what they said after the interview to reveal the truth; the researcher asked each participant whether he/she wanted to add or deduct any information he/she said, and all the participants were happy with what they said during the interview.

### **1.17.1 Credibility**

According to Major and Savin-Baden (2010:75), the notion of the word credibility is centred on the trustworthiness that the results are accurate and honest. Results are credible if the subject can see the accurateness of the description and interpretation of own human experience (Chilisa, 2012:165). Anney (2014:276) outlines credibility strategies to be followed to meet the requirement of credibility as member checking and reflexivity journaling.

- Member checks– Final themes were taken back to the participants to give them an opportunity to judgement on the accuracy of the themes and for the account of credibility. The researcher knows and understands that participants are the source of detailed information, another opportunity was offered to the participants to give emerged views as input because the participants are the role-plays in the study.
- Referential adequacy– Literature was collected from books, journals, articles and various methods used by the researcher to verify the accuracy of the information obtained. Data collected will be analysed where there is complexity the researcher went back to the book to verify the data or the journal and proper reference methods was used for source acknowledgement.

### **1.17.2 Transferability**

Transferability is based on the assumption that findings of the different circumstances may have the same result if applied to another situation (Major & Savin-Baden, 2010:75).

To enhance transferability research must be able to help others who wish to conduct new research (Thomas, Nelson & Silverman, 2011:364). Li (2004:305) cited in Anney (2014:278) proposes that to permit judgement about how good the research context is a thick description must be provided. This means enough contextual information about the study as to allow comparison to other who wishes to conduct new research:

- Thick description– In this researcher, the researcher explained all the research processes, from data gathering, the framework of the study until to the findings and recommendations, so it can be easy when other researchers want to use the same information for their study, they must know where to find it.

### **1.18 METHODS TAKEN TO ENSURE RELIABILITY**

Jones, Brown and Holloway (2013:165) explain that the term reliability in quantitative researchers refers to the consistency of results obtained from research study and repeatability of the measurement test. Jones et al. (2013:165), are of the view that most qualitative researchers using these term came up with other

explanations. LeCompte and Goetz (1982) as cited in Thyer (2010:355) outline qualitative research reliability as the magnitude to which the set of construals derived from several translators is adequately consistent, stable and trustworthy. In this study, the researcher ensured reliability as follows.

- Negative analysis– After the interviews, audio recordings of the transcribed interviews were checked. Themes were retrieved, amalgamated, parted and grouped to identify a strong distinction between themes, where needed data was reduced, and even themes were removed.
- Clarifying– Chan, Fung and Chien (2013:5) point out the importance of bracketing is to ensure that the researcher does not influence the subjects by using foreknowledge and suppositions to limit the understanding of the participants' perspectives. The researcher did not influence nor interrupt the participants with researcher's own knowledge or past experiences. Interviews were segmented into participants own versions; this process ensured to root out biases and prejudices.

Kirk and Miller (1986) cited in Thyer (2010:356) concurs with the checking of the interpretation to correct mistakes made during the interview; to ensure that themes were correctly identified and documented, as well as to ensure that themes were calculated according to the frequency used. This was done to enhance reliability.

#### **1.18.1 Dependability**

Dependability is the originality associated with the positivist perspective of reliability and replicability; it is the idea that the trustworthiness of the research can take time (Major & Savin-Baden, 2010:75). In this study, multiple data collection was explored to improve dependability:

- Triangulation– The researcher enhanced reliability and replicability by using different forms to collect data and diverse sources that validated data.
- Literature– Thorough literature review.
- Documents– Thorough documents of context.
- Semi-structured interviews– Audio recorded.

Each form of data collection contributed different viewpoint to shed light on answering the research questions.

- Dependability audit– Interview schedule was used as a tool to support data to be audited.
- Interviews were recorded.
- Data was broken down into small segments.
- Data was amalgamated, parted, and grouped to identify a strong distinction between themes.

The researcher followed guideline as explained by Hennink (2014:90) to enhance dependability audit. Bowen (2009) and Li (2004) cited in Anney (2014:278), explains that for proper audit trial raw information, field notes and documents should be kept for the auditor.

### **1.18.2 Conformability**

Major and Savin-Baden (2010:76) point out that conformability endorses the application of neutrality in the data examination and interpretation by the researcher, further add that the results need to be confirmed by other not by the researcher.

- Peer debriefing– The researcher visited a colleague who is familiar with the interview themes and topic, in order to secure the validity of the gathered information. The role of this colleague was to give insight with regard to data interpretation on what he agreed with and disagreed, as he was impartial. This technique helped the researcher's to re-analyse certain issues as new perspectives emerged.

## **1.19 ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS**

Marshall and Rossman (2011:44), states that ethics are set of principle or abstract rules that sit as an overarching entity guiding the research to ensure that the researcher act in a moral and responsible manner, for an example procedural matter includes requesting and obtaining permission from MPD before conducting the study. Permission was granted by the MPD Provost Marshal General to conduct this study (Annexure A).

Delamont (2012:276) suggested five main considerations for ethics:

- A clear explanatory detailed consent form must be used as the tool to inform the participants about the research process.
- Be cautious of power dynamics, do not endanger the relationship by placing the subject in a difficult position.
- Put the well – being of the subject above the research project.
- Identity and privacy of the subject must be confidential.
- Present data accurately and feed through written text must be obtained from the subject.

A consent form that ensures the researcher abided by the five main ethics considerations was prepared. Participants were informed about the study, and each participant was asked to sign a consent form, none of these participants was a minor. In addition, the official Unisa ethical clearance certificate, College of Law Ethics Review Committee letter is attached as Annexure C, also granted the researcher approval to conduct research.

According to Gray (2014:68), ethics is the philosophical word coming from the Greek expression ethos, which means custom or character. Consulting the University of South Africa Policy on research ethics (2007:9), the researcher adhered to the moral principles of the ethical guidelines of UNISA by ensuring the following:

- **Informed consent**

The participants were informed of the nature of the study, the purpose of the study, detailed and accessible information was provided, as participants were to make an informed decision to part take in the study. Participants made a voluntary choice to take part in the study, to ensure this; the participants signed the informed consent form before part taking in the interview.

- **Confidentiality**

The identity of the participant and privacy was respected. Confidentiality of the data was maintained, to ensure this only the researcher knows the personal details of the participant to whom a research code has been allocated. The personal details

of the participants remained confidential and are not disclosed. They are kept separate from the research results by the researcher.

- **Avoid harm to participants**

The researcher informed the participants that they have a right not to be exposed to harm physical, mental and emotional, should they felt exposed they were to withdraw at any stage of the interview.

- **Ensuring privacy**

The participants when informed that should they feel uncomfortable during the interview or feel tired at any point the participant was to request a break or request that the interview be postponed to a later date or terminated if so desired. Interviews were recorded to avoid fabrication but participants were informed that it was compulsory should they not wish to be recorded.

- **Anonymity**

Participants were given assurance that their names were not going to be revealed in the dissertation and even to their Commanders. This was done to assure the participants that their involvement would not put their lives or work at any risk.

## **1.20 RESEARCH STRUCTURE**

### **Chapter 1: General orientation**

This chapter introduces the reader to the research problem, discusses the background of the problem studied and gave the overview of the study. This includes the aim and objectives of the study, and the purpose of the research. It also covers the methodological framework of the study.

### **Chapter 2: Crime prevention**

This chapter explains the concept of crime prevention and crime prevention methods.

### **Chapter 3: Military Police Agency Instruction (MPAI 12/00)**

This chapter will cover how the MPAI regulates crime prevention to the MPs.



**Chapter 4: Crime prevention by the Military Police**

This chapter will cover the role of the military police in crime prevention and how should the military police prevent crime.

**Chapter 5: Findings and recommendations**

This chapter will cover the findings, recommendations and conclusion.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **CRIME PREVENTION**

#### **2.1 INTRODUCTION**

The NCPS of 1996 is the official government strategic response to the high crime rate in South Africa; crime prevention has been one of the main priorities as of the government as from 1996 when the NCPS was launched (Singh, 2016:8).

The NCPS of 1996 and 1998 White Paper on Safety and Security 1998, enunciates how should policing be transformed and also suggested commitment on building a 'safe and secure' living atmosphere where "all the citizens of South Africa are secured and feel safe" (South Africa, 2015:9). According to Downes (2016:46), crime prevention does not have a single meaning to all people; each person's meaning for crime prevention can interpret different things to different people.

Sutton, Cherney and White (2014:26) are of the view that the concern over the safety of crime prevention has existed for decades, as there was a crime committed. What has changed is the form of committing a crime and the term of crime prevention from reactive to proactive crime prevention (Sutton et al., 2014:26). To meet this changes in crime prevention, the U.S. department, private corporations including government agencies after being encouraged by Newman (1972), in his book *Defensible Space*, a funded project that contributed to modern crime prevention (Sutton et al., 2014:26).

South Africa (1998:6) states that when the government implemented the NCPS in 1996, the NCPS gave an outline for a multi-dimensional approach to crime prevention. Amongst other things, it provided revenues on which government departments could integrate their approaches to problems of crime control and crime prevention. In simple terms, according to Pheiffer (2013:1), these strategies meant a swing of crime prevention obligations from crime control, which stressed the importance on reactive and crime prevention proactive which discharge, which aimed at preventing crime from occurring.

United Nations Office on Drug and Crime (UNODC) (2008:3) outlines several guidelines set to ensure effective crime prevention as follows:

- Crime prevention should be driven by evidence, not by ideology;
- Establishment of partnerships with different stakeholders;
- Accountability and sustainability should be encouraged by crime prevention;
- Crime prevention should be community-based;
- Enhance socio-economic development; and
- The rule of law must be improved by crime prevention activities.

In this chapter, the researcher will focus on what does crime prevention entails?

## **2.2 THE CONCEPT OF CRIME**

For common understanding, it is imperative to first clarify the concept of crime, before dwelling on the meaning of crime prevention. According to Winter, Globokar and Roberson (2014:5), crime can be categorised into two kinds, which are felony and misdemeanour. Felony is a serious crime punishable by imprisonment from one year to life sentence, while misdemeanour constitutes criminal offences with the punishment of a fine or sentence less than one year.

Crime can be defined in different ways; it can mean different things to different people (Newburn & Neyroud, 2013:127). For instance, what criminal law/Western law views as an act or omissions amount to a crime, in the traditional law/African law that can be seen as less serious to constitute crime. Uglow (2006:12) states that Law of evidence given provision to judges to make discretion, boundaries of those rules seem unclear to have existed to give substance to certain fundamental principles.

An example, taking a family member and giving that person employed in the environment that you are employed, in western law it amounts to a crime, while in African law, this behaviour is not seen as a crime, it is a normal practice. Nobody has combined these two to make one South African law. As a result, this has caused confusion; confusion led to people losing the respect for law and when they do not respect the law that is when they commit crime.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What they comprehend by the definition of crime." Certain themes emerged from the all participants' responses from all samples A, B, C and D. As

this was an open-ended question, some participants responded with more than one single response to the question. This led to a total number of the responses provided by participants being more than the participants, as it can be seen from the themes presented below in Table 2.1.

**Table 2.1: Frequency table for the meaning of crime**

What is crime?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Act or omission of crime that is punishable by law		1	1	1	1			1		1	1	1			1	1		1	1	1	13	60%
Crime is any unwanted act condemned by society. law				1				1	1			1	1			1					6	30%
Unwanted doing that can be taken to court, and a person can be found guilty and punished to prescribed sentencing				1													1	1			3	15%
Unlawful act that is condemned by law	1						1														2	10%
Unlawful conduct						1								1							2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 2.1, answers given by the participants corresponds with the literature; Crime means an act or omission constituting an unlawful act against a person punishable by law (The New Shorter Oxford English

Dictionary, 1993:549 as cited in Grant, 2011:1). The viewpoint of Law of Evidence for an act to constitute a crime, the evidence must be admissible, facts must be proven, and information must be legally acceptable to be valid, according to the set of rules, to assist the judge and jury recreate the crime (Singh, 2014:1). There were no dissimilarities to the definition of crime; their responses are as follows:

- Unlawful doing that is punishable by law (13 out of 20 = 60%);
- Crime is any unwanted act condemned by society (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- Unwanted doing that can be taken to court, and a person can be found guilty and punished to a prescribed sentence (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- Unlawful act that is condemned by the law (2 out of 20 = 10%); and
- Unlawful conduct (2 out of 20 = 10%).

Some responses provided by the participants were:

- An act or omission of crime that is punishable by law (13 out of 20 = 60%);
- An unwanted doing that can be taken to court, and a person can be found guilty and punished to a prescribed sentence (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- An unlawful act that is condemned by the law (2 out of 20 = 10%).

These responses are supported by the definition of crime as explained by (Dutelle, 2014:3), crime is the commission of an act prohibited by the legislation, and that render the perpetrator liable to imprisonment or a fine by the state.

Although two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question by giving this response, "Unlawful conduct." This is not necessarily incorrect; these participants' responses are vague, these could be due to the lack of the knowledge of these participants who are Military Police Officials and some of them since last attended crime prevention course when doing basic training 1994. Other six participants suggested that crime is any unwanted act condemned by society (6 out 20 = 30%) which is relevant to the literature consulted supporting the view of Materni (2013:264) pointing out that the documented history shows that the societies had punished offenders to justify the practice on morals.

## **2.3 CAUSES OF CRIME**

Teasdale and Bardley (2017:5) believe that to be able to develop an intervention that would be relevant to crime situations; it is essential to understand what causes crime, the prevention science has placed less emphasis on explaining why and how factors give rise to offending. Added further, that to develop a life-course approach to understanding to crime the prevention science has learnt that society transforms certain criminality behaviour to be crime and those engaged in this are identified as offenders or criminals (Teasdale & Bardley, 2017:5).

Therefore, the researcher saw the necessity to explain the elements of crime before discussing factors contributing to crime. This will enlighten the reader that although there are factors contributing to crime, it does not mean that there is no crime committed within those factors, there will be the elements of crime.

### **2.3.1 Elements of crime**

Joubert (2010:44) describes the four elements of crime that must exist upon the commission of crime as:

- **Legality**– The conduct “desire” to commit, the crime of the person must be recognised as a crime in the South African law.
- **Conduct**– Take the form of either an act or omission (person must act or fail to act where he/she should have acted positively). An example when a person shoots his victim (act), omission (when a lifeguard on duty fails to assist a swimmer in distress, who then drowns). The requirement for conduct is will (motivation) or ability.
- **Unlawfulness**– The actions of the person must be totally against the law or what the society deems to be acceptable.
- **Culpability**– This means that there must be ground upon which the person can be personally blamed.

SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention (2006:16) highlights that no crime can be committed without desire and ability, desire to commit crime can be a result of predisposing factors. Predisposition factors refer to any existing condition(s) that may lead to or cause a criminal act (SAPS Division Training

Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention, 2006:19). For example, the historical background of racial inequality in South Africa led to poor education, unemployment, poverty and moreover in recent years greed, abuse of dangerous and wide use of drugs and alcohol.

The researcher is of the view that crime prevention is necessary for any society and must focus on preventing or reducing these factors, these factors are discussed below.

### 2.3.2 Factors that contributing to crime

Three imperative factors must be present for crime to occur; the potential victim, motivated offender and the environment, which is known as location, these factors are referred to as the crime triangle (Miller, Hess & Orthmann, 2011:99).

Figure 2.1 below illustrates the crime triangle. Crime is the product of three factors, a potential target to be a prey of the offender, motivated offender to violate the law and the particular place for crime to occur when both must meet (Felson, 1995, 2002 as cited in Sutton, Cherney & White, 2008:18). Figure 2.1 illustrates the interaction of these factors, a woman carrying a bag alone on the dense field then an opportunity has been created for the motivated offender, who has the desire to commit, he then forcefully take the woman's bag and ran away (Sennewald & Christman, 2008:558).



**Figure 2.1: Retail crime, security and loss prevention**

(Source: An Encyclopaedic Reference (Sennewald & Christman, 2008:558))

Seeing crime as illustrated in figure 2.1, enlightens a better connotation between the interactions of the elements that must be there before the crime can occur. The assumption is that removal of one or more elements may lead to none occurrence

of crime, for example, when circumstances stimulating crime are prevented crime will not happen (Rivero, 2010:2).

According to Figure 2.2, Felson (1995, 2002) cited in Sutton et al. (2008:180), target refers to inanimate objects and people, whereas guardianship refers to security devices and human actors: cameras, alarms, parents, security guards, teachers and store people.



**Figure 2.2: The crime triangle**

(Source: Boba, 2005:61)

Leclerc and Savona (2017:71) surrounding the crime triangle is an outer triangle control, the people who can have the impact to provide control over these three elements and it is due to the lack triangle control that provides an opportunity to commit crime. Furthermore, as illustrated in Figure 2.2, is the handler that has the responsibility to control offender's action, guardian to protect the victim and manager to make the environment to be less opportunistic to criminality (Leclerc & Savona, 2017:71).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What are the causes of crime?" Certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C, and D. These participants' answers presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.2.



**Table 2.2 Frequency table for the factors contributing to crime**

What are the causes of crime?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
So many factors, jealous, poverty and so forth.	1	1	1	1		1	1		1	1	1		1		1	1			1	1	14	65%
Unemployment.			1			1			1	1	1		1		1	1		1		1	10	50%
Hunger due to unemployment.				1	1			1			1						1				5	25%
The interacting elements that should be there for crime to occur; they should be a potential victim, an offender with a desire to commit a crime and the environment where crime is probable to happen.												1		1		1	1				4	20%
Poverty, improper parental guidance.							1						1						1		3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.2, all the participants were asked, “What are the causes of crime?” Participants’ responses were centred on the factors of the causes of crime (predisposing factors) not the elements of crime, based on the factors that contribute to crime their responses corresponded with the literature. They responded as follows:

- So many factors, jealous, poverty and so forth (14 out of 20 = 70%);
- Unemployment (10 out of 20 = 50%);
- Hunger due unemployment (5 out of 20 = 25%);
- They should be a potential victim, an offender with a desire to commit a crime and the environment where crime is probable to happen (4 out of 20 = 15%); and
- Poverty, improper guidance (3 out of 20 = 15%).

As presented in Table 2.2, more than one participant has provided more than one for the question asked. This resulted in the number of responses being the 35, which is more than the number of the participants 20; this is because the question was an open-ended question, offering participants to respond with more than one answer to a single question.

Although there were dissimilarities from the participant's answers, all answers were relevant to the explanation to what are the causes of crime, four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) their responses were as explained by Cronkhite (2013:204) three elements that may be observed to factors contributing to crime,

- A person/offender must have a desire to commit crime;
- Victim must be vulnerable, or someone must possess the ability to commit the crime; and
- The location must avail the opportunity for both to be in the same place at the same time.

Factors like jealousy, poverty and so forth from fourteen participants (14 out of 20 = 70%), unemployment from ten participants (10 out of 20 = 50%), hunger due unemployment from five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%), and improper parental guidance from three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%). All of these factors are within the of range of the crime cycle, they are closely linked to predisposing factors because they can influence, motivate or inspire the desire to commit crime, this view is supported by the NCPS (1996:13) as factors giving rise to high rate crime in South Africa.

## **2.4 THE NATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION STRATEGY (NCPS)**

NCPS (1996) is the foundation of National Programmes and conceptual framework for crime prevention at all levels implemented by the cabinet in 1996. Due to the serious threat posed by high levels of crime, the government then regarded crime as a national priority and introduced a comprehensive strategy that will go beyond providing only effective policing to effectively reduce crime, involving various government and civil society (NCPS, 1996).

The vision of the NCPS (1996) advocates that all South Africans will enjoy their daily lives from undue fear of crime (NCPS, 1996:2). The SANDF is not marginalised by the NCPS (1996) as it stipulates one of the secondary functions as the joint co-operation with the SAPS to uphold law and order (NCPS, 1996:24).

Certain themes emerged from participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C, and D, when analysing the interpretation of the participants' responses to the question, "What is the meaning of National Crime Prevention Strategy?" As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one single answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.3.

**Table 2.3: Frequency table for the National Crime Prevention Strategy**

In your opinion what is the National Crime Prevention Strategy?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Government tackling crime; look for factors which make people commit crime.					1		1	1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	12	60%
I do not know.	1	1	1								1										4	20%
It is an organisation that whose task mainly is to direct South Africa as to how should we conduct ourselves to reduce crime because I think we cannot eliminate crime from any society.				1		1			1	1											4	20%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 2.3, answers provided by the participants correspond with the literature research, and there was no much dissimilarity as

explained by the NCPS (1996:2), revealing the government's initiative of reducing crime levels in South Africa through the objectives of the NCPS:

- The detailed crime prevention policy framework establishment at all spheres of government agencies and civil society in addressing crime;
- Promote a shared common vision amongst the inhabitants of South African and mutual understanding to deal with crime at all levels;
- Come up with a sound crime prevention intervention that will enhance quality service delivery that will resolve factors leading to high rate crime levels;
- Enhance the involvement of all the stakeholders; and
- Creating an atmosphere that would allow conducting of effective crime prevention activities at all levels.

Responses provided by the participants were:

- Government tackling crime; look for factors which make people commit crime (12 out of 20 = 60%);
- I do not know (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- It is an organisation that whose task mainly is to direct South Africa as to how should we conduct ourselves to reduce crime because I think we cannot eliminate crime from any society (4 out of 20 = 20%).

Although there are dissimilarities from twelve participants' answers (12 out of 20 = 60%), all answers intertwined to the explanation of what the NCPS is, NCPS is the government initiative to reduce the levels of crime in South Africa (NCPS, 1996:5).

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) were unable to explain what the NCPS is, not necessarily because they are not knowledgeable, but maybe it is because they need retraining. Participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responses were vague, not to say it is incorrect, their level of understanding of the concept is not according to the (NCPS, 1996:2).

## **2.5 CRIME PREVENTION**

The challenge in trying to conceptualise crime prevention is to avoid creating a definition that is so wide and will render ambiguous and pointless meaning

(Schneider, 2015:6). According to Lab (2014:27), crime prevention definition differs from program to program and study to study. Evidence should drive crime prevention; it is necessary to understand the root causes of particular crime problems so as to initiate relevant interventions (UNODC, 2008:89).

Crime prevention in functional terms can be defined as ethically acceptable because it places limits on what can be done regarding crime prevention and evidence-based action as it allows test theories to be included as new evidence that anticipates reducing the criminal events (Ekblom, 2011:114).

The National Crime Prevention Institution (1978:1) as cited in Schneider (2015:6) defines crime prevention as the acknowledgement, valuation, and making of prediction about crime risk and the initiated actions required to eliminate it. The National Crime Prevention Institution definition, in the researcher's opinion, addresses the crime risk factors related to victimisation and crime by predicting crime risk and it enlightens that crime prevention is proactive, the strength of crime prevention is in prevention.

The International Crime Prevention Community (ICPC) (2010:10) defines prevention as outlined in the United Nations Guidelines for the prevention of (2002); prevention encompasses strategies and measures that seek to reduce the crime risk of crimes happening, harmful effects and the perceived fear of crime. Furthermore, the ICPC view this definition as not referring to deterrent rather as referring to a preventative approach emphasising on an action that can be taken either before the occurrence of crime or after it (ICPC, 2010:10).

Unlike the definition on the White Paper on Safety and Security, which puts a strong emphasis on deterrence, Burger (2007:81) explains that the White Paper on Safety and Security (1998) defines crime prevention as all the activities that reduce, deter or prevent the occurrence of specific crimes:

- Firstly by altering the environment in which crime occurs;
- Secondly by changing the conditions which are thought to cause crime; and
- Thirdly by providing a strong deterrent in the form of an effective Criminal Justice System.

The strength of the above first two points emphasises on eliminating influences of the physical environmental conditions, as the measure to tackle the causes of crime from the roots (Nurse, 2015:132). For example in dark places installing streetlights for clear visibility. The third last point strength elaborated by Burger (2007:81) brings the Criminal Justice System into the play in crime prevention whereby the government must pose harsher punishment, to remind offenders of the risk of committing an offence (Nurse, 2015:132).

SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention (2006:19) defines crime prevention as all policing and community activities that ensure that crime is either prevented or reduced by focusing on factors that might lead to crime. This definition explains it clearly that crime prevention needs all effort from the Government, Police and the community to be eliminated, meaning crime prevention is the shared responsibility.

Winterdyk (2017:427) agrees with the above concept of the shared responsibility by stating that shared responsibility does not replace government intervention, it enhances partnership in crime prevention with all stakeholders focusing on social and environmental factors that would reduce the risk of victimisation, disorder and crime by the implementation of the range strategies.

According to the (CRCPS) Czech Republic Crime Prevention Strategy (2011:6), crime prevention is the joint effort that must be able to cover the following vital objectives:

- Establish a sustainable partnership with all stakeholders on all levels;
- Ensure stable crime prevention system local, regional and provincial;
- Increase the number of stakeholders in crime prevention initiative;
- Form Community Police Forum in low levels;
- Improve implementation of preventative measures on all levels; and
- Implementing measures stipulated in the NCPS.

In the view of the above explanation, it would be impossible for the police alone to make an impact in crime, police need stakeholder to work with them to reduce crime effectively and also need the government on all levels, to develop strategies that

could easily help them to initiate interventions that would address the specific needs of the community served (UNODC, 2008:68).

UNODC (2008:68) explains that police in crime prevention lead in front, as they have a responsibility to ensure that the rule of law is upheld. Despite leading from the front, it is crucial that police must establish a strong partnership with all the stakeholders including the local community, as they know the heart of the causes of crime (UNODC, 2008:68). In this partnership the universities have a critical role to play, to give advice and do researches, the schools are important to spread crime awareness, non-governmental sector and business to provide resources (UNODC, 2008:68).

Effective crime prevention shared responsibility means identification of a wide-range cause of crime addressed by collaboration between different role players, strong, dedicated leadership at all levels and measurable result with clear lines of accountability (ANZCP SOG) (Australian and New Zealand Crime Prevention Senior Offices Group, 2012:4). UNODC (2008:23) points out that crime cannot be reduced by poorly trained, overstretched, low-morale police forces, government who depend on criminal justice, citizens who encourage crime as a form of business, prisons without rehabilitation programmes and corrupt courts. UNODC (2008:23) states that crime can only be reduced through integrated efforts of all law-abiding stakeholders, with the police that prioritise the prevention of crime as their primary role and the willingness to work with the community. In South Africa, local authorities have developed a joint strategy that could result in the establishment partnership, safety forums, co-ordinated municipal crime prevention initiatives and that would lead to the Secretariats of Safety and Security organises social crime prevention interventions (UNODC, 2010:32).

According to CRCPS (2015:12), the aim of crime prevention is to solve the problem rather than the symptoms, for effective problem solving with regard to crime problems, a strategic partnership between the police and all stakeholders must be established. CRCPS (2015:15) explains that this joint venture should entail the following:

- A wide range of intervention programs to crime;

- Programs promote the well-being of people; and
- Programs that encourage pro-social behaviour through social, economic, health and educational measures with a particular emphasis on crime and victimisation.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question “What is the meaning of crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ response from all samples A, B, C, and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one single answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.4.

**Table 2.4: Frequency table for the meaning of crime prevention**

What is the meaning of crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Crime prevention is preventing crime before it occurs.				1			1		1	1	1			1		1	1			1	9	45%
Is the way to prevent crime before anything.	1	1	1			1						1									5	25%
Interventions applied to prevent crime or to eliminate crime from occurring.								1					1		1			1	1		5	25%
Crime prevention includes all policing and community activities aimed at preventing or reducing precipitating and predisposing factors leading to crime.				1	1		1														3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)



According to the interpretations of Table 2.4, all the participants were asked, “What the meaning of crime prevention is?” Answers given by the participants correspond and are relevant with the literature research. According to CRCPS (2015:15), preventative measures must render a successful and guarantee sustainability of their results, as the main objective of crime prevention is to reduce incidence of crime before occurring and its seriousness while increasing the feeling of safety within the public.

The total answers provided by participants is 22 which are more than the number of the participants 20, this is due to the fact that more than one response was provided for a single question by the participants, as the question was an open-ended question and their responses are as follows:

- Crime prevention is preventing crime before it occurs (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- Crime prevention is the way to prevent crime before anything (5 out of 20 = 25%);
- Interventions applied to prevent crime or to eliminate crime from occurring (5 out of 20 = 25%); and
- Preventing or reducing precipitating and predisposing factors leading to crime (3 out of 20 = 15%).

According to nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%), crime prevention is preventing crime before it occurs. This response is relevant to the literature consulted. It is supported by (Schneider, 2015:6) stating that crime prevention remains a vague concept that implies diverse things to different people, in all crime prevention is about reducing the opportunities for crime before occurring rather than react after a crime has been committed.

Although five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) responded to the above question by saying, “Is the way to prevent crime before anything,” this response is vague not necessary incorrect, as it can be supported by the view of Lab (2014:27) defining crime prevention as any means designed to reduce crime level, furthermore stating that crime prevention does not necessarily place limits on what can be done.

Five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) gave a valid response that, “Crime prevention is interventions applied to prevent crime or to eliminate crime from occurring.” This correlates with the literature research, Ekblom (2005:28) cited in Lab (2014:27) stating that crime prevention is interventions to reduce the causes of the incidences of crime before occurring and its harm. This above explanation addresses crime prevention as an intervention to reduce crime. Interventions are all the activities intended to eliminate or reduce the risk of crime (Ekblom, 2011:115).

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) offered a reasonable viewpoint of crime prevention that, “Crime prevention is the joint venture between the police and public that is directed towards discouraging a potential criminal” which means police alone cannot adequately win the fight against crime. This above response is relevant and can be sustained by UNODC (2008:53) explaining the wording shared responsibility, in crime prevention it mean all stakeholders devoted to solving crime issues referring to, a community that wants to be involved and the police that want to adopt the models with the concept of preventing crime as the first priority.

Schneider (2015:21) concurs that crime prevention is the shared responsibility between local communities, government policymakers and agencies:

- Government – React to crime through laws and criminal justice system;
- Police – lead the crime prevention projects;
- NGOs – Lead community’s crime prevention interventions;
- Municipal – Reactional projects; and
- Public services – Lead proactive interventions approach to crime.

The strength of the above-shared responsibility enlightenment is based on the principles of well-shared responsibility, meaning strong leadership engagement in crime prevention at all levels as well as strong co-operation between all stakeholders willing to address the issues responding to crime causes effectively (ANZCP SOG, 2012:3).

### **2.5.1 The difference between crime prevention and crime control**

Crime prevention is all programmes implemented to eliminate crime before it happens, which make it proactive in nature. Roelofse (2011) cited in Albrecht,

Dow, Plecas and Das (2015:197) states that crime control is about activities, while crime prevention is about responsibilities; the two measures address crime and upholding social order.

The role of crime control is to enforce the law by regulating criminal conduct through justice with the aim to control offender's behaviour, while influencing the society not to commit crime, encouraging the idea of crime prevention of respect another person's space and property (Roelofse 2011, cited in Albrecht et al., 2015:197).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question "What is crime control?" certain themes emerged from all the participants' responses from all samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one single answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.5.

**Table 2.5: Frequency table for crime control**

What is crime control?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
To keep crime under control not to reach a widespread.			1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	17	85%
If you can prevent then you still have to control you do not stop there from preventing one, you must still carry on with the controlling of it.	1	1																			2	10%
Crime control is a reactive policing.					1																1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.5, all the participants were asked what crime control is, to understand whether the participants had a comprehension of the definition. Answers given by the participants correspond and are relevant with the

literature, Eklom (2011:117) explains that crime control can mean to either hold crime happenings or their harm below the tolerable level or halt the fast spread of crime not to reach the stage of not being unable to be controlled. An example of crime control can be seen in Singapore whereby the government invoke death penalty to have low rates of crime (Sutton et al., 2008:7). Their responses are as follows:

- To keep crime under control not to reach a widespread (17 out of 20 = 85%);
- If you can prevent then you still have to control you do not stop there from preventing one, you must still carry on with the controlling of it (2 out of 20 = 10%); and
- Crime control is a reactive policing (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Although there are some differences in the participant's responses, they do not disagree with the literature offered instead they intertwined with the meaning of crime control. Seventeen participants (17 out of 20 = 85%) responded by providing this response to the question asked: "To keep crime under control not to reach a widespread." This response has supported the view of Grant (2015:10) who states that crime control is acting after the crime occurred which is reactive, to keep crime on a tolerable level not to spiral out of control.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) on the question, "What crime control is," responded by saying "If you can prevent then you still have to control you do not stop there from preventing one, you must still carry on with the controlling of it." This view is not necessarily incorrect; the researcher did not find the literature to support it.

Without contradiction one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) indicated a general understanding of crime control, explaining crime control as reactive policing, this view is relevant to the literature and supported by the view of Karn (2013:3) stating that lot of incident-focus of crime control are reactive "police acting after an incident" rather than proactive strategic "act before crime can happen."

### 2.5.2 Proactive crime prevention

According to Schneider (2015:21), the main characteristic of the proactive nature crime prevention is to anticipate criminality and prevent crime. Fenelly (2012:68) define crime prevention as explained by the British Home Office Crime Prevention Programme, the anticipation, recognition and appraisal of a crime risk and initiation of action to reduce it. A practical example of proactive crime prevention by the Military Police; observations, patrols, crime awareness programs all of this is attempts by the Military Police to prevent crime from occurring (MP Agency, 2007:2).

United Nations Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice (2002:4) explicates that the nature of proactive crime prevention should be those approaches that care about the well-being of the community. Those approaches must be promoted through educational events and must improve neighbourhood's condition to influence victimisation, offending and insecurity caused by crime (United Nations Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice, 2002:4).

Certain themes emerged when analysing the interpretation of the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D to the question, "What is proactive crime prevention?" participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one single response as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.6.

**Table 2.6: Frequency table for proactive crime prevention**

What is proactive crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
To act in advance trying to reduce or eliminate crime risk before it can even take place.	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1		1	16	80%
It means that as the military police you have to be always available in the area of responsibility, you have to make sure		1									1	1							1		4	20%

What is proactive crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.6	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
that you are always visible.																						

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.6, all the participants were asked: “What is proactive crime prevention?” Answers given by the participants correspond and relevant with the literature research, According to the SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention (2006:19), proactive crime prevention must stop the causes of crime before the actual occurrence. Furthermore, proactive crime prevention must be able to intervene to safeguard and protect the community, property and the environment. The responses are as follows:

- To act in advance trying to reduce or eliminate crime risk before it can even take place (16 out of 20 = 80%); and
- It means that as the military police you have to be always available in the area of responsibility, you have to make sure that you are always visible (4 out of 20 = 20%).

Although there are dissimilarities from sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%), all the answers intertwined and agreed broadly with literature, on the definition of proactive crime prevention. Their views are supported by the view of Schneider (2010:8), confirming the strength of acting in advance, as the proactive nature of crime prevention, that attempt to eliminate criminal activities before it happens either by tackling the root causes of crime or eliminate the risk for crime to occur.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) viewed proactive crime prevention as the way to reduce crime by showing police presence, the available literature does not support this view not to say it is incorrect, but it is narrows as it can be linked to visible policing. Fenelly (2012:68) explains the five components of the proactive crime prevention:

- Anticipation this is the stage of crime prevention that can be viewed as the progressing for further action, to prevention aspects of given circumstances pertaining to crime risk;
- Recognition is the ability to forethought the existence of the risk or what to be a crime risk to develop measures to act on the risk;
- An appraisal is the ability to evaluate suggests and recommendation to develop strategies to eliminate crime risk;
- Crime risk is the probabilities of harmed by crime; immediate remedies should be in place after identification of crime risk; and
- The initiation of action move crime risk is corrective action to reduce or move the risk of becoming a victim of crime this must be done without delay of recommendations.

### **2.5.3 Reactive crime prevention**

Fenelly (2012:129) explains that reactive crime prevention is traditional policing, driven primarily by capturing report after the fact. Basically, it is responding to call for service, and there is no identified or analysed crime problem or pattern to be addressed.

Leclerc and Savona (2017:18) elaborate that with reactive crime prevention it is imperative to note that, the police gather most of the insight of what happened from the victims after the incident; the discretion of reactive is to identify the offender with the purpose to arrest.

Certain themes emerged when analysing the participants' responses interpretation from all the samples A, B, C and D on the question, "What is reactive crime prevention?" As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.7.

**Table 2.7: Frequency table for reactive crime prevention**

What is your understanding of the word 'reactive' crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Re-active is when we are acting to the incident or crime report after it occurred.		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	19	95%
I do not know.	1																				1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.7, all the participants were asked, “What is reactive crime prevention?” Answers given by the participants correspond and are relevant with the literature, Reactive crime prevention is the traditional standard style of enforcing law whereby the police respond to calls for service and act to criminal incidents after the fact (Miller, Hess & Orthmann, 2011:17). The responses are as follows:

- Re-active is when we are acting to the incident or crime report after it occurred (19 out of 20 = 95%), and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Although there are dissimilarities from nineteen participants (19 out of 20 = 95%), all the answers intertwined to the explanation of what reactive crime prevention is as explained by Leclerc and Savona (2017:80) police wait to be called for services, they do not anticipate so that they can act before crime occurs. Reaction crime prevention is equal to the employment of situational crime prevention, using CTTV in the taxi rank after an incident, officials investigating the incident reviewing the CTTV to identify the perpetrators, for possible arrest and criminal justice actions (Mackey & Levan, 2013:210).

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to explain what reactive crime prevention is, not necessarily because this participant is not knowledgeable, due to the nature of training the participant received.



## 2.6 THE PRINCIPLES OF CRIME PREVENTION

The principles of crime prevention are all about selecting the best crime prevention approach for the unique crime situation to improve vulnerable areas with regard to crime. Brantingham and Faust (1976) as cited in Schneider (2010:21) explains the three crime prevention approaches as primary, secondary and tertiary as adapted by public health. Moore 1995, Brantingham and Faust 1976, quoted by Welsh and Farrington (2010:2) confirms the first effort to group models as the initiative of the public health model for preventing disease and injuries.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the explanation of “What are the principles of crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one single answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.8.

**Table 2.8 Frequency table for the principles of crime prevention**

Explain the principles of crime prevention.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer B.8																						
I do not know.	1	1	1	1	1													1		1	7	35%
Crime prevention principle to me is preventative actions									1	1		1		1			1		1		6	30%
Principles of crime prevention are to address the needs of crime, visible policing.						1	1	1								1					4	20%
All approaches that can be used to prevent crime; primary prevention, secondary and tertiary prevention.											1		1		1						3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.8, all the participants were asked to explain the principles of crime prevention. Despite the major participants not responding to the question, answers given by the participants who responded were

relevant to the literature consulted. Lab (2014:28) outlines a number of different ways that crime prevention activities can be categorised into namely: primary, secondary and tertiary crime prevention, these models can assist to tackle crime problem at a different stage of development. Their responses are as follows:

- I do not know (7 out of 20 = 35%);
- Crime prevention principle to me is preventative actions (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- Principles of crime prevention are to address the needs of crime, visible policing (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- All approaches that can be used to prevent crime; primary prevention, secondary and tertiary prevention (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Seven participants (7 out of 20 = 35%) were unable to explain what principles of crime prevention principles are, not necessarily because they are not knowledgeable, it is due to the nature of training they received. Although there are dissimilarities from six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%), who responded by saying "The principles of crime prevention are preventative actions." This response is vague and cannot be supported by any literature research.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) responses also support the above point of view that all crime prevention approaches fall within the crime prevention principles. This respond is supported by the view of SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention (2006:5) stating that all the levels of any crime prevention programme initiated can add value on the application of it.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) did not disagree even though they provided different responses; their responses interlinked and they are of the view that crime prevention principles are factors that contribute in making the environment safer. Harris (2006:8) points out that crime prevention principles must be able to identify vulnerable areas and weak spots to make objects or property more difficult to attack. This supported by Dvoskin, Skeem and Douglas (2012:128) who stated that the principles of crime prevention should target unpredictable risk factors for crime.

## 2.7 PRIMARY CRIME PREVENTION

Brantingham and Faust (1976) and Moore (1995) are quoted by Welsh and Farrington (2010:2) stating that the first effort to group models to prevent occurrences was by the initiative of the public health model. The public health model come up with a distinctive widely used three approaches in crime prevention that is primary, secondary and tertiary crime prevention (Moore, 1995; Brantingham & Faust, 1976 quoted by Welsh & Farrington, 2010:2).

On primary prevention stage, the risk factors social and physical circumstances are then ought to be changed to prevent crime, they might be no risk correlated to the factors, henceforth precautions are taken in advance to eliminate crime (Cronje & Zietsman, 2009:150).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question "What is the meaning of primary crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.9.

**Table 2.9: Frequency table for the primary crime prevention**

What is the meaning of 'primary prevention'?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Focuses on to eliminate the occurrence of crime at early stages.				1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	16	80%
I do not know.		1	1									1									3	15%
Roadblock.	1								1												2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 2.9, responses given by the participants correspond with the literature consulted; Lab (2014:28) explains each technique and how it can assist to tackle crime problem at a different stage of development:

- Primary prevention- Actions taken to avoid the initial development of crime problem;
- Secondary prevention- Moves beyond the point of general societal concerns and focus on individuals and situations, for an example offenders who are at risk to commit crime; and
- Tertiary- Problem has already occurred, on this stage is about to stop reoccurrence.

There were no dissimilarities to the meaning of primary crime prevention. The responses are as follows:

- Focuses on to eliminate the occurrence of crime at early stages (16 out of 20 = 80%);
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- Roadblock (2 out of 20 = 10%).

The total responses provided by participants is 21, which is more than the number of the participants 20, this is due to the fact the question was an open-ended question; participants were offered a chance to give more than one answer for a single question. Sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%) shared the view that primary crime prevention focuses on the physical condition of the environment that provides an opportunity to crime risk at the early stages of prevention.

The above view is in agreement with the literature consulted, Brantingham and Faust (1976) cited Lab (2010:27) stating that primary crime prevention deals with eliminating influences and identifying conditions in the social and physical circumstances that provide an opportunity for or prevalence of crime. Furthermore, primary crime prevention seeks to alleviate situations that may lead to precipitate criminal acts directly.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question asked what the meaning of primary crime prevention is. The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not capacitated comprehensibly with crime prevention vocabulary since most of them are not university graduates. Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) suggested that primary

crime prevention is roadblocks. This answer is not necessarily incorrect; as roadblocks form part of interventions after identification of factors that might lead to crime, this view is not supported by literature researched.

## 2.8 SECONDARY CRIME PREVENTION

Secondary crime prevention is an attempt to address those identified as being at risk of becoming offenders or being involved in criminal activities, this approach identifies the key risk factors for offending and implements prevention methods to counteract them (Sutton et al., 2014:39).

An example of secondary crime prevention is drug(s) initiative at school, in this case, identification of the target that is deemed to be more prone to criminality is young males. The prediction for future criminality to counteract the risk, is young males becoming drug users or being used to sell drugs to peer, therefore this drug initiative is worth for their attention (Rogers, 2012:101).

These attempts refer to all measures of secondary crime prevention specifically targets those individuals identified to be at risk of being involved in criminal activities; these measures contain a treatment of psychological, remedial education, learning disorder and social competency programs (Schneider, 2015:28).

Certain themes emerged from the participants' responses interpretation from all the samples A, B, C and D, on the question, "What is the meaning of secondary prevention?" Other participants gave more than one answer in their response, as this was an open-ended question this led to a total number of the answers provided by participants being more than the participants; the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.10.

**Table 2.10: Frequency table for the meaning of secondary crime prevention**

What is the meaning of 'secondary prevention'?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Secondary prevention engages in early					1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	15	75%

What is the meaning of 'secondary prevention'?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
identification of potential offenders.																						
I do not have an idea.	1	1	1						1							1					5	25%
Secondary prevention will be like making sure that you do not leave items or properties loosely so that they can attract the criminal's eyes.				1																	1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D).

According to the interpretation of Table 2.10, answers given by the participants correspond with the literature, secondary crime prevention refers to an approach using the focal goal of pre-signs identification, prediction of those who are at risk of offending or victimisation, meaning criminally involved, and try to prevent the commission of a crime before it occurs (Brantingham & Faust, 1976 cited Coomber, Donnermeyer, McElrath & Scott, 2014:163). There were no dissimilarities to the meaning of secondary crime prevention, and the responses are as follows:

- Identification for possible intervention that focuses on individuals who are at risk to commit crime and try to cap future crime occurrences (15 out of 20 = 75%);
- I do not know (5 out of 20 = 25%); and
- Secondary prevention will be like making sure that you do not leave items or properties loosely so that they can attract the criminal's eyes (1 out of 20 = 5%).

The total number of the answers provided is 21, which is more than the number of the participants 20, this is due to the fact the question was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to give more than one answer for a single question. Fifteen participants (15 out of 20 = 75%) shared the view; that secondary crime prevention is the identification for possible intervention that focuses on individuals, who are at risk to commit crime and try to cap future crime occurrences. This is relevant to the literature and supported by Mackey and Levan (2013:4)

elucidate secondary crime prevention as the design to inhibit the individual widespread and the criticalness of being at the risk of continuation or criminally involvement.

Five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) were unable to respond to the question asked what the meaning of secondary crime prevention is, the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not well capacitated comprehensibly with crime prevention vocabulary since most of them last attended the crime prevention course 1994. The answer provided by one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) suggesting that secondary crime prevention is making sure that a person does not leave items or properties insecurely as that can attract the criminal's eyes, this answer is not necessarily incorrect nor supported by the literature consulted by the researcher.

## **2.9 TERTIARY CRIME PREVENTION**

Tertiary crime prevention is used after a crime has occurred to prevent a successive incident or reoffending to already convicted offenders; the aim is to intervene in the criminals lives in the way that it would prevent successive incidents of committing a further crime as individuals are already known (Skinns, 2016:35). For those who are already victimised, this level of prevention can opt interventions to prevent re-occurrence and programs to rehabilitate convicted offenders, for example to those already suffered burglary, an initiative of reinforcing security measures can be given to the victims to discourage repeat offences (Rogers, 2012:102).

The objective of the tertiary crime prevention rest within the criminal justice system which is reactive in nature, as the activities of tertiary prevention address the problem after the commission of a crime; arrest, rehabilitation, treatment, incarceration and prosecution (Lab, 2010:29).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the explanation of, "What tertiary prevention is?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.11.

**Table 2.11: Frequency table on the meaning of tertiary crime prevention**

Explain tertiary prevention.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It is concerned with long-term crime prevention; programmes that will make offenders not to commit crime in the near future.	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	11	55%
I do not know.	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	9	45%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.11, all the participants were asked, to explain tertiary prevention, in order to understand whether the participants had a comprehension of the definition. Answers given by the participants correspond and are relevant to the literature research, Schneider (2010:22) point out that the goal of tertiary crime prevention is to establish measures designed to prevent reoffending with the hope that individuals will stop committing further offences. Their responses are as follows:

- It is concerned with long-term crime prevention; programmes that will make offenders not to commit crime in the near future (11 out of 20 = 55%).
- I do not know (9 out of 20 = 45%).

Eleven participants (11 out of 20 = 55%) showed common understanding to the explanation of, "What tertiary prevention is," by responding with this response, "Tertiary crime prevention is a concern with long-term crime prevention; programmes that will make offenders not to commit crime in the near future." This response corresponds with the literature consulted where Fisher and Lab (2010:209) states that tertiary crime prevention focuses rest on the crime problems, which has been established to prevent re-occurrence through intervention that minimise the criminal opportunities and pursue to stop lawlessness by those already under the control of the justice system.



Nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%) were unable to respond to the question asked what the meaning of secondary crime prevention is. The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not well capacitated comprehensively with crime prevention vocabulary since most of them did their crime prevention basic training during 1994 and up to now, there is no follow up for a refresher course.

## 2.10 ENVIRONMENTAL CRIME PREVENTION

The environmental crime prevention seeks to change the design features of the physical environment, in such a way that factors creating an opportunity for criminal activities to occur are reduced, or totally remove the fear of crime. This approach is referred to as crime prevention through environmental design (CPTED) with the emphasis on putting a vast of preventative measures (Lab, 2014:54).

For example, a dense bushy terrain between two residential zones can give rise to different crime incidents; then territorial reinforcement is the key to the sense of ownership that can discourage illegitimate users. The municipal can enhance the safety and minimise the opportunity for crime to be committed by turning the vegetation or the surface into a park and ensure that there are clear, visible sight lines so that individuals can be observed (Sutton et al., 2008 61-64).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question "What is environmental crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.12.

**Table 2.12: Frequency table for the meaning of environmental crime prevention**

What is environmental crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Modifying the physical				1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	16	80%

What is environmental crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
environment to reduce the opportunity for crime to take place.																						
Environmental crime prevention I can explain it in this way like for instance the farmers they got mealies, fruits by doing patrols all over we are preventing the criminals from stealing the environment I do not know how to put it in the right way. I think is where if we especially inside the base if a person comes in like they come into our base and they just decide that they would cut off those trees is for the environment we need to protect that and not to let that happens.	1	1							1												3	15%
I do not know.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D).

Presenting the interpretations as quoted in Table 2.12, the answers given by the participants correspond and are relevant with the literature research. Fennelly (2012:40) defines the CPTED as reducing of crime risk and fear of crime through the designing or modifying the physical environment by application of precise

approaches and strategies. Fennelly (2012:40) further added that these strategies involve the use of the CPTED principles to impact crime: architectural design, lighting, access control and property identification. The responses are as follows:

- Modifying the physical environment to reduce the opportunity for crime to take place. (16 out of 20 = 80%);
- Environmental crime prevention I can explain it in this way like for instance the farmers they got mealies, fruits by doing patrols all over we are preventing the criminals from stealing the environment, I do not know how to put it in the right way. What I think is where if we especially inside the base if a person comes in like they come into our base and they just decide that they would cut off those trees, is for the environment we need to protect that and not to let that happens (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%) showed common understanding with regard to the definition of the environmental crime prevention they responded by saying, "Environmental crime prevention is modifying the physical environment to reduce the opportunity for crime to take place." This corresponds with the literature consulted where ANZCP SOG (2012:5) explaining that environmental crime prevention is the broader planning initiative, aimed at addressing the environmental conditions that promote and sustain crime, by reducing the fear of crime through designing or modifying the physical environment to create safer places that are less crime-prone.

Although three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were of the view that environmental crime prevention is the protection of the environment, this is not necessarily incorrect; this response is vague, so it is evidence that participants lack knowledge due to training, some participants did not do advance crime prevention. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question asked, "What the definition of the environmental crime prevention is?" The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer because of the lack of on the job training within the working environment.

### **2.10.1 Principles of environmental crime prevention**

The principles of environmental crime prevention aim to identify and harden design features, which reduce the opportunities for criminal activities to occur, thus increase the chances of being seen or caught while still committing an offence (Lab, 2010:52).

#### **2.10.1.1 Architectural**

Fennelly (2012:36) states that architectural design refers to the structures of buildings or areas alignment, in such a way that it enhances the links to adjacent neighbourhoods or land uses through natural surveillance. The architectural design planning must be able to control the movement of users and goods and the protection of people and assets whereby it must influence to reduce the opportunity of committing crime (Fennelly, 2012:36). For example, when the person is inside the building, he/she must be able to see what is happening in the public realm or in buildings over the street.

#### **2.10.1.2 Access control**

Sutton et al. (2008:63), explain that access control is strategies aimed to deny access to a potential crime target or restrict movement on designated areas. Fennelly (2012:204) agrees with the above view that access control is any means that restrict access to those who are unauthorised. Lab (2014:56) elaborates further that access control seeks to allow only those persons who have permission or authority to be in an area or building to enter, by increasing effort needed to enter or exit site or building, the person actually reduces the opportunity for crime to occur.

Fennelly (2012:186) outlines tips on the different systems of access control that can be implemented:

- Door design– Must be constructed of heavy-duty material;
- Identity cards– To be worn by security guards or staff personnel inconspicuous position for recognition from a distance;
- Entry card system– Sensor remoted computer system reader unlocks the door and records the transaction if the card matches the loaded data;
- Parking areas– Install fences, gates for physical protective measures;

- Visitor identification and control– Visitors must be confirmed from the person visited, the procedure for proper identification must be implemented;
- Baggage screening– To be enforced by a security guard, it is essential to have full co-operation of the employees;
- Separate entries and exits– Entries/exits control personnel to conduct spot-checks; and
- Biometrics fingerprints devices – Use a print match to the loaded device.

### **2.10.1.3 Lighting**

Lighting must be consistent with the local conditions to address crime problems. The height of lighting fixtures must be elevated to provide the desired coverage to ensure appropriate illumination and areas used during the night should have enough visibility to enhance the ability to detect crime in progress or identify offenders and to see others within the public realm (Lab, 2014:62).

Farrington and Welsh (2002) cited in Lab (2014:63) argues that lighting does not reduce crime but offers the ability for the victims to see better within the public realm, which makes people feel safer and reduce the fear of crime.

### **2.10.1.4 Property identification**

The objective of property identification ensures that items are easily recognisable when stolen, this design infuses the sense of ownership to the civil society by encouraging them to permanently mark or engrave their valuable properties to eliminate the reselling in the market (Gaines & Kappeler, 2010:446). According to Lab (2010:64), property identification is all about making hard for the offender to dispose of marked items.

Olsen (2014:3233) states property marking assists to establish ownership claims for prosecution and enhance the chance for repossession of stolen property. Laycock (1985, 1990) cited in Lab (2014:67) assuring the success of property marking by revealing that this design showed great success in South Wales three villages dropping burglary cases to 40 percent.

#### **2.10.1.5 Neighbourhood watch**

Neighbourhood watch is popularly known as a home watch, block watch or community watch and it has been a vital part of common crime prevention in the Western countries, US and UK. Most of this neighbourhood watch is collaborative and consultative between the community and the police, with the police providing security measures, and coordinating crime prevention activities and problem-solving skills (Welsh & Farrington, 2012:30).

The objective of the neighbourhood watch is to eliminate the opportunity for crime before it happens by improving security actions (Fraser, 2011:7). Livingstone (2015:12) explain neighbourhood message alert system as one of the successful measures that are carried out by neighbourhood watch of Scotland, whereby the police and the community are on the web or on the system that allows sending crime trend and intelligence updates in the area to carry out crime prevention measures. For example, speed humps discourage speed, a street with gateways this treatment could convey a harsh message to offenders to think twice before they engage in criminal activities, life quality is improved when the fear of crime is reduced, and the sense of security is enhanced.

#### **2.10.1.6 Surveillance**

Natural, formal and informal surveillance are three types of surveillance practice (Cornish & Clarke, 2003 cited in Welsh & Farrington, 2009:9). According to Mackey and Levan (2013:210), the proactive and reactive application can be used in surveillance, proactively seek to prevent or reduce crime before it can happen and reactive is more of investigative attempts to identify the perpetrators for the prosecution.

Clarke (1997:21) is cited in Welsh and Farrington (2009:9) stating the sense of safety is instilled when people have a clear sight distance, can see others, and be seen in clear sightlines. The primary objective of natural surveillance is to keep intruders under observation through public space to discourage criminal activities; it entails proper location of windows, lighting and landscaping to allow for excellent extensive viewing of the area for those who observe regular users as well as intruders (Welsh, Farrington & O'Dell, 2010:15).

Formal surveillance is another type of surveillance, using specialist, security guard personnel and technology devices, such as closed-circuit television (CCTV) to watch an area of activity, while surveillance by employees encourage employees to be vigilant and train them how to react when they come into contact with the potential risk (Clarke, 1997:20 cited in Welsh & Farrington, 2009:9).

Informal surveillance refers to the design of the physical and natural environment to create clear site line of being seen by others and open space which provide opportunities for capable guardianship through observation of public space, including the extent which they can intervene considering the distance of the buildings (Gibson, McCabe & Johnson, 2013:5).

#### **2.10.1.7 Citizen Patrols**

According to Arrington (2007:45), citizen patrols can be directed to places encountering high criminal acts with the purpose of discouraging crime by identifying and reporting criminal activities to police. The main aim of establishing the citizen patrols is to reduce crime opportunity by intensifying surveillance on suspicious activities at the problematic areas and alerting the police.

The basic functioning of the citizen patrols is within the community policing concept; it entails active foot, vehicle and bike patrols within the community checking buildings and property, the is to reduce criminal opportunities by increasing surveillance on problematic areas (Mackey & Levan, 2013:72).

#### **2.10.1.8 General deterrence**

Siegel (2016:106) states the concept of general deterrence is that crime can be prevented by harsher punishment as consequences of committing crime through the effective criminal justice system.

Criminality is affected not only by the fact of punishment but also by punishing the potential criminals with exemplary punishment with the intention to fear the consequences of crime and to prevent future criminals committing crime (Kaufman, 2016:20).

### 2.10.1.9 Public education

Winterdyk (2017:44) states that the public education is an initiative that endorses respect for human rights by raising awareness on particular crimes and how to respond to it through educating families and communities. Public education alerts the communities about the escalating levels of old and new crime with the aim to change the thinking of the public who are victims of a particular crime or at risk (UNODC, 2010:38).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question “What are the principles of environmental crime prevention? certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.13.

**Table 2.13: Frequency table to explain the principles of environmental crime prevention**

Explain the principles of the environmental crime prevention.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.13	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
An example of CPTED a place with more light provide visibility no crime perpetrator wants to be seen; light eliminates the possibilities of criminal activities.					1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	14	70%
Discouraging crime by changing physical designs features.				1			1										1				3	15%
I do not know.	1	1	1																		3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

Twenty-one responses were provided as it can be seen with the themes presented in Table 2.13 more than one participant has provided more than one response to the question. The answers provided by the participants consistent and relevant with



the literature consulted. Queensland Police Services (2007:5) explains the principles of the environmental design as referring to the interventions that can play a significant role in influencing perceptions of safety, in this regard planning and design measures can be utilised to enhance the feeling of safety in areas where people feel vulnerable (2007:5). The responses are as follows:

- I will give you an example a place with more light provides visibility no crime perpetrator wants to be seen; light eliminates the possibilities of criminal activities (15 out of 20 = 70%);
- Discouraging crime not to occur or eliminate it by changing physical designs features (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Fifteen participants (15 out of 20 = 70%) showed common understanding with regard to the explanation of the principles of environmental crime prevention; they responded by giving an examples as the answer to the question, "A place with more light provides visibility with no crime perpetrator wants to be seen, light eliminate the possibilities of criminal activities." This view corresponded with the literature consulted, where Fennelly (2012:75) states that some studies documented crime reduction, after lighting fixtures improvement systems were installed.

Fennelly (2012:75) states further that although lighting improves to reduce crime, there is no sign that it totally reduces crime or displacement of effects documented, for an example if individuals living in residence reduce the likelihood of robbery by better lightning they may be displacing the robbery to another less lit area.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) responses are close to the definition of environmental crime prevention, is not necessarily incorrect, these participants respond is vague as it can be linked to the definition of environmental crime prevention not the principles of environmental crime prevention. The other three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question asked, "What the definition of the environmental crime prevention is?" The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not well capacitated comprehensibly with it latest crime prevention knowledge since some

of this participants did their basic crime prevention training 1994 and there was no advance course follow up.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question “What would you suggest as an effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. As this was an open-ended question, participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.14.

**Table 2.14: Frequency table for the effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public**

What would you suggest as a deterrent to stop crime opportunities that would be effective in the eyes of the public?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Patrols can discourage criminal activities.	1	1			1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1		1	1				1	13	65%
Police visibility can be used as the deterrent may eliminate crime opportunities.			1	1					1					1			1	1			6	30%
I would suggest the ways that would allow the community to partake in crime prevention.																			1		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.14, participants provided the following responses to the question, “What would you suggest as an effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public?” Answers given by the participants were relevant with the literature consulted, Police crime prevention

strategies, such as direct patrol, can have a disincentive impact on crime because it focuses on preventing crime before occurrence as contemplated by (Koper, 1995; Sherman & Weisburd, 1995; Sherman, 1997 as cited in Crank, Murray, Irlbeck & Sundermeer, 2012:52). The responses are as follows:

- Patrols can discourage criminal activities (12 out of 20 = 65%);
- Police visibility can be used as the deterrent may eliminate crime opportunities (6 out of 20 = 30%); and
- I would suggest the ways that would allow the community to partake in crime prevention (number of times answered one (1) and frequency 5%.

Twelve participants (12 out of 20 = 65%) in responding to the question “What would you suggest as an effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public?” The participants replied by saying, “Patrols can discourage criminal activities.” This response corresponds with the literature consulted, supported by (Koper, 1995; Sherman & Weisburd, 1995; and Sherman, 1997 as cited in Crank et al., 2012:52), concurring that patrols have an impact in preventing crime.

Although six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%) were of the view that police visibility can serve as the deterrence to stop crime in the eyes of the public, this response is not necessarily incorrect, but to the researcher this response is more of an approach, this view is supported by SAPS Annual Report (2012:1) explaining that visible policing is an approach comprising of specialised intervention, crime prevention and border security. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the question by saying, “Deterrence should involve the community” this is not necessarily incorrect, as the community is deemed to be part of the intervention to deter criminality.

## **2.11 SOCIAL CRIME PREVENTION**

Grant (2015:2) highlights the following social factors as the main delinquent social root causes that must be addressed by initiated programs and policies in social crime prevention:

- Inequality lack of support in families (poverty)- Informal settlements without life quality;

- Inaccessibility technical skills- Unskilled society who cannot create opportunities for themselves;
- Inadequate employment opportunities- Few working opportunities; and
- Sedentary parental supervision- Parental conflicts and dysfunctional families with uncaring.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is the meaning of the social crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.15.

**Table 2.15: Frequency table for the meaning of social crime prevention**

Explain the meaning of social crime prevention.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Other crimes cannot be solved by police alone; social crime prevention is the coalition of the government police and the community to come up with an appropriate solution of the causes of crime in that community and prevent people from committing a crime.						1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	13	65%
Nowadays you should know what crime is happening in that area and what people are targeting so, that you can be able to post people to do observation; you must also highlight to people not to leave their houses			1	1	1				1												4	20%

Explain the meaning of social crime prevention.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.15	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
unattended because that can invite criminals.																						
I do not know.	1	1								1											3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations is as quoted in Table 2.15, all the participants with high frequency of 65% their responses corresponded and were relevant with the literature research, social crime prevention is interventions aimed to break the cycle that causes a person to participate in the involvement of crime and its actuality (Brown & Campbell, 2010:645). For example, good education coupled with no job prospects lead to nowhere; instead, it necessitates specific strategies including financial assistance, from all levels of government and business partners to create opportunities to promote individual responsibility (Zhao & Liu, 2011:213). The responses were as follows:

- Other crimes cannot be solved by police alone; social crime prevention is the coalition of the government police and the community to come up with an appropriate solution of the causes of crime in that community and prevent people from committing crime (13 out of 20 = 65%);
- Nowadays you should know what crime is happening in that area and what people are targeting so that you can be able to post people to do observation; you must also highlight to people not to leave their houses unattended because that can invite criminals (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Thirteen participants (13 out of 20 = 65%) showed common comprehension, regarding the meaning of the social crime prevention; they responded by saying, "Social crime prevention is the coalition of the government police and the community to come up with appropriate solution of the causes of crime." This view

corresponded with the literature consulted where Winterdyk (2017:4) states that social crime prevention encourages strategies that will impact primary social and economic causes of crime and the dynamic that makes offenders commit crime.

Although four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responses closely link social crime prevention to situational crime prevention, this is not necessarily incorrect, these participants' response is vague, as situational crime prevention is not about doing observation, is about educating the community on specific crime that particular and how to deal with them. These participants respond could be the lack of the level of crime prevention knowledge caused by lack of on the job training within the working environment.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question, "What is the meaning of social crime prevention?" the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not well capacitated with crime prevention vocabulary and this could be the result of the lack of on the job training within the working environment.

## **2.12 DEVELOPMENTAL CRIME PREVENTION**

Developmental crime prevention (DCP) is an attempt that seeks to reduce predetermined risk factors of root causes of criminality (Farrington Welsh, 2007 as cited in Delisi & Vaughn, 2015:511). Risk factors are initial factors that expansion risk of incidence before the onset to commit crime; there are not necessarily causes but variables that predict a high probability of offending (Kazdin et al., 1997 as cited in Welsh & Farrington, 2010:4).

The aim of DCP is to detect protective measures and to influence the risk of crime (Winterdyk, 2017:4). Behaviour, beliefs and attitudes that are learnt may contribute towards crime involvements (Lab, 2014:158). DCP is early identification of the risk factor of crime, and counteract it before the damage not repairable with suitable remedial interventions (Welsh & Farrington, 2010:7). For example, the fundamental anti-bullying initiative at schools is to deter the early stages of violent juvenile offenders; the risk factor prediction is the increase of the violent society (Hawkins & Catalano, 1992 as cited in Welsh & Farrington, 2010:8).

According to Homel (2005:2), DCP aimed to improve protective factors that impact upon early life likelihood of person's experiences, from childhood to adult for later behaviour not to engage in delinquency acts. Furthermore, they seek to formulate preventive responses before crime strikes most people or become entrenched, by initiating early interventions that tackle the crime causes danger before the impact is felt (Homel, 2005:2).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What is developmental crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.16.

**Table 2.16: Frequency table for the meaning of developmental crime prevention**

What is developmental crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.16	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Focuses on the way crime develop and try to prevent the roots of that particular crime.			1				1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	14	70%
Continuation of preventing crime like for instance maybe crime happens here each and every time and come up with another plan that it must not happen.	1			1	1	1			1												5	25%
I do not know.		1																			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.16, all the participants were asked, "What is developmental crime prevention?" the responses given by the participants were relevant with the literature consulted, DCP is an intervention intended to halt individual from embarking on a life of delinquency involvements (Tremblay & Craig, 1995 and Farrington & Welsh, 2007b) as cited in (Welsh & Farrington, 2010:3). The responses are as follows:

- Early intervention to crime, these include various training programmes, crime awareness to people who are at particular crime risk (14 out of 20 = 70%);
- Continuation of preventing crime like for instance maybe crime happens here each and every time and come up with another plan that it must not happen (5 out of 20 = 25%); and
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Fourteen participants (14 out of 20 = 70%) showed common comprehension in their answers to the question of “What is developmental crime prevention whereby they responded by saying developmental crime?” they responded by saying, it is early intervention to crime including various training programmes such a crime awareness to people who are at particular crime risk. This view correlates with the literature consulted where Farrington and Welsh (2007) as cited in De Lisi and Vaughn (2015:511) stating that DCP encourages protective factors, for example, educational involvements and good family relations that could prevent individuals from developing a potential criminal behaviour and offending.

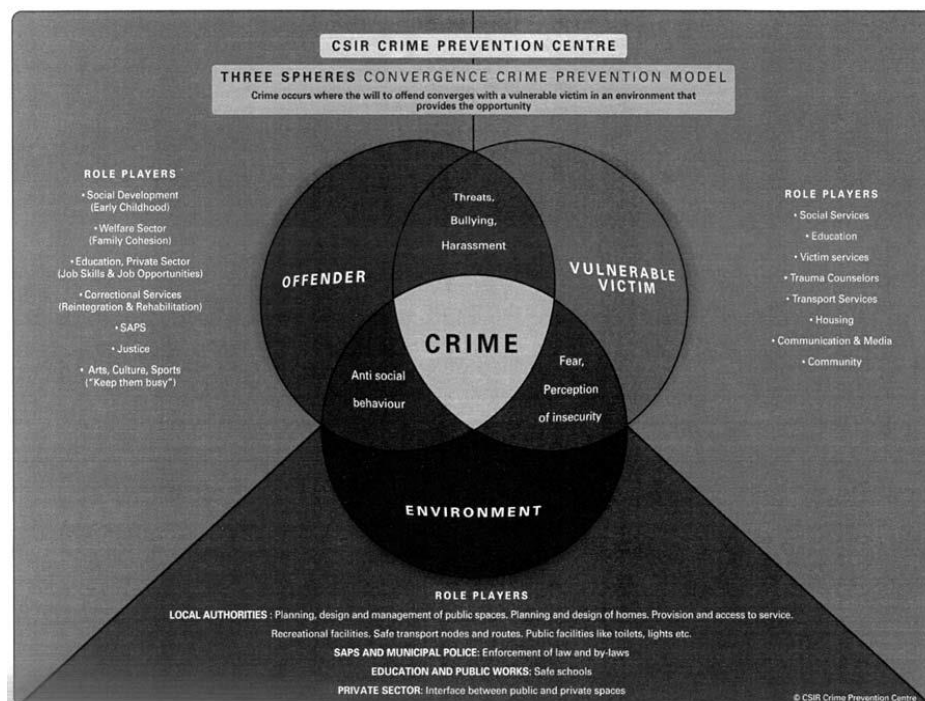
Where crime is common crime prevention must come up with the plan to reduce or eliminate crime before it can happen; this is the responses provided by five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%). These responses are not necessarily incorrect but are vague, as DCP address the symptoms of crime; from the beginning these participants are not knowledgeable in this context. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question asked “What is developmental crime prevention?” the researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer because of the lack of on the job training that would capacitate this participants’ crime prevention vocabulary comprehensibly.

## **2.13 THE ROLE PLAYERS IN CRIME PREVENTION**

Before explaining role players in crime prevention, for the better understanding for the reader, the researcher saw the need to define the word ‘partnership’ in crime prevention. Partnership is the way to use the experience, skills and strengths of the role players in the manner that all partners benefit and crime is eliminated or reduce (Kruger, Lancaster, Landman, Liebermann, Louw & Robertshaw, 2016:21).



Figure 2.3 illustrates the crime cycle and the different potential agents or organisation to join partnership; strong partnership is the key to effective crime prevention (Torigian, 2009:18). Torigian (2009:19) states that to deter re-offending the private sector and correctional services need to co-ordinate rehabilitation and empowerment programmes of the offenders. The local authorities and police together, need to change the environment in order to eliminate crime opportunities not to occur (UNODC, 2010:32). UNODC (2010:38) points out that the role players should prepare vulnerable victims, raise public awareness to change the general public attitudes of those at risk and create avenues for support services of the victims, for an example trauma counselling.



**Figure 2.3: Role players in the crime prevention within the crime triangle**

(Source: Three sphere Convergence Crime Prevention Model: Crime ICPC, 2007:157)

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question "Who are the role players in crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.17.

**Table 2.17: Frequency table for who are the role players in crime prevention**

Who are the role-players in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.17	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
All government levels, police to sum up everybody that is willing to fight crime.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.17, all the participants were asked “Who are the role players in crime prevention?” The responses given by the participants were consistent with the literature research. Role players refer to any institution, government department, non-governmental organisation, community, public and private sector, any organisation that can play a role in the crime prevention (SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention, 2006:17). The responses are as follows:

- All government levels, police to sum up everybody that is willing to fight crime (20 out of 20 = 100%).

According to the response given by twenty participants (20 out 20 = 100%), a role player in crime prevention are all government levels, police to sum up everybody that is willing to fight crime. These views correspond with the literature consulted where Cronje and Zietsman (2009:154) points out that effective crime prevention can only be complete if sustained in the form of groups.

## 2.14 CRIME PREVENTION MECHANISM

Crime prevention mechanism is strategies aimed at eliminating opportunities for crime not to occur (Cronje & Zietsman, 2009:154). Ekblom (2011:54) accedes that crime prevention mechanism is undertaking every kind of action that can have an impact on crime preventing.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question “What is meant by crime prevention mechanism?” certain themes emerged

from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 2.18.

**Table 2.18: Frequency table what crime prevention mechanism is**

What is meant by 'crime prevention mechanism'?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer B.18	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Measure approach, methods that can have an impact on crime on not happen or reduce it.				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	17	85%
I do not know.	1	1	1																		3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 2.18, all the participants were asked: "What is meant by crime prevention mechanism?" answers given by the participants correspond and relevant with the literature consulted, crime prevention mechanism is interventions designed to address specific needs in the community (Kruger et al., 2016:21). Their responses are as follows:

- Measures, approaches, methods that can have an impact on crime not happen or reduce it (17 out of 20 = 85%).
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Seventeen participants (17 out of 20 = 85%) demonstrated common understanding in their answers to the question of "What is meant by crime prevention mechanism?" these participants responded by saying, "Crime prevention mechanism are measure, approaches, methods that can have an impact on crime not happen or reduce it." This view is supported by Weisburd, Farrington and Gill (2016:98) confirming that crime prevention mechanism is the very broad range strategies of crime prevention efforts to prevent crime.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question asked, "What is meant by crime prevention mechanism?" the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because they are not well capacitated comprehensibly with crime prevention vocabulary since most of them last attended crime prevention courses in 1994 during basic training.

## **2.15 SUMMARY**

From the literature review and data analysis in this chapter, it has emerged that crime is an unwanted phenomenon to all the people of the world. According to the content defined crime prevention is the answer to the high rate of crime only if it implanted by a proper crime prevention approach applicable to that particular environment.

From the researcher's own experience confirmed by the data analysed and literature reviewed crime prevention is the shared responsibility for all within the boundaries of South Africa, police alone cannot eliminate crime; this is possible if communicated through proper forums.

The aim of this study is to determine how the Military Police Officials (MPO) should prevent crime in their proclaimed military areas. For the researcher to reach the research objective, it was imperative first to gather research questions based on chapter two: 'What does crime prevention entail?' The advantage of this research question will be for the benefit of the MPO to be knowledgeable, so as to be effective and efficient because the answer to the problem statement of this study, MPO should be in the position consider the most appropriate strategy to eliminate crime within their military proclaimed areas.

## **CHAPTER 3**

### **MILITARY POLICE AGENCY INSTRUCTION (MPAI 12/00)**

#### **3.1 INTRODUCTION**

Preventing crime has been a catchphrase for the entire government department and a priority for the government in South Africa since 1996 when the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) was launched. Crime pattern within the Department of Defence shifted focus after 1994 from disciplinary crime such as AWOL, drunkenness, personnel inspection, etc. to real crime such as theft, housebreaking, robbery etc. The important objective of crime prevention strategy should be to protect people who are at risk of being either criminals or crime victims (Albrecht & Das, 2011:16).

The MPD needed to compile a document and promulgate it, to all their structures to enable them to shift from disciplinary crime prevention to a real core business of preventing crime as required by the need. The MPD then initiated Military Police Agency Instruction 12/00 (MPAI 12/00) during 2001, crime prevention guidelines and procedures, to their crime prevention sections in all structures, MPAI 12/00 currently serves as crime prevention guidelines for the entire MPD crime prevention section in all the Military Police Stations.

#### **3.2 THE PURPOSE OF THE MPAI12/00**

Avila (2007:40) states that the creation of the purpose is the starting point for the action plan, purpose define an ideal state of affairs to be accomplished, MPAI 12/00 (2007:i) explains that the purpose of MPAI12/00 is to articulate implementation and application of crime prevention instruction to be executed by the following:

- Regional Provost Marshals
- Area Provost Marshals
- MP Detachment Commanders
- Crime prevention section members

The strategy of the MPD at this level is the distribution and application of MPAI 12/00, allocation of crime prevention resources to the MPD structures to fulfil the national concern prevention of crime (Burger, 2007:8).

### **3.2.1 The mission statement of the Military Police Division regarding crime prevention**

Hill, Schilling and Jones (2017:15) define mission statement as action-oriented, as it contains what the department is going to do and why it is going to do that. The researcher agrees with above definition of the mission statement. The strength of this definition is on “what” and “why,” the researcher believes that the purpose for the functioning of any department must be based on the mission statement as the framework, which explains the comprehensive end results to be achieved.

For example, the MP crime prevention section “What must they do?” response, “Crime prevention,” and “Why?” “To create a crime safer SANDF by providing an effective proactive crime prevention.” This view is supported by Ashworth (2011:85) who states that the mission statement should make a distinctive internal purpose for the functioning of the department.

Hill et al. (2017:15), outline the four components that make the mission statement:

- The statement of the main goals
- The statement of the vital values
- The desire of the department (vision)
- The statement for the reason of existence

MP Agency (2002:1) states that the mission of the MPD is to render a professional, cost-effective MP service to all our clients and other groups in supporting the development of a crime-free and disciplined environment, competent members with high moral and integrity, mutual support and optimal utilisation of resources. When the researcher perused MP 12/00, he did not find this mission.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question “What is the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer

for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.1.

**Table 3.1: Frequency table for the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention**

What is the mission statement of the Military Police Division regarding crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
MPD does not have a mission statement with regard to crime prevention.							1	1		1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1		10	50%
I forgot it.	1	1	1										1	1							5	25%
Is to strive to render the service that is required by the community.				1	1	1														1	4	20%
The problem is, if the mission statement is not given to me, when I go to work I cannot be able to be creative enough, I cannot understand my job, and if I do not understand my job, the mission and the vision is going to fail, that means my planning would not be in line with the mission statement.																					1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.1, all the participants were asked, “What the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention?” Responses given by the participants were with no disagreement, but not according to the literature reviewed. Their responses are as follows:

- MPD does not have a mission statement with regard to crime prevention (10 out of 20 = 50%);
- I do not know (number of times answered 5 out of 20 = 25%);
- Is to strive to render the service that is required by the community (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- The problem is, if the mission statement is not given to me, when I go to work I cannot be able to be creative enough, I cannot understand my job, and if I do not understand my job, the mission and the vision is going to fail, that means my planning would not be in line with the mission statement (1 out of 20 = 5%).

The majority participants (10 out of 20 = 50%) responded to the question “What is the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention?” by saying:

MPD does not have a mission statement with regard to crime prevention; this response is not necessarily incorrect, the researcher is of the view that due to the lack of the on job training within these participants work environment that is why members they lack insight information.

Five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) were unable to respond to the question “What is the mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention?” The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to lack of on job training, which supposes to empower the members on certain MP related issues.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded to the question by saying “Is to strive to render the service that is required by the community.” These participants' responses are closely linked to Hill et al. (2017:15), one of the components that make the mission statement: the statement of the main goals.

One participant (1 out of 5 = 5%) clarified the importance of the mission statement by saying “If the mission statement is not given to me, when I go to work I cannot be able to be creative enough, I cannot understand my job, and if I do not understand my job, the mission and the vision is going to fail.” This view is supported by the literature consulted where Hill et al. (2017:15), state that a mission statement must be real so that it can be able to hint department to go about fixing problem noted.



### **3.3 THE CONCEPT OF MILITARY POLICE AGENCY INSTRUCTION (MPAI 12/00)**

MPAI 12/00 is the written crime prevention guidelines and procedures for the entire MPD, crime prevention sections in all MP structures (MP Agency, 2002:i). The complexity of MPAI 12/00 noted by the researcher, MPAI 12/00 does not have a direct source written from it; basically, it was MPD responding to crime prevention issues, in recognition of the seriousness of crime with the DoD to address crime issues.

#### **3.3.1 Definition of the concept of the Military Police Agency Instruction**

The MPAI 12/00 concept of crime prevention it was implemented to prioritise crime prevention as the primary objective for the military police shifting the enforcement of discipline to be the secondary objective. Crawford (2013:5) strategy change is about the removal of unnecessary functions and raises the key areas that need competencies that require training. For effective execution of crime prevention duties, MPAI 12/00 is the reference for the military police crime prevention sections at the MP Station and what should be noted MPAI 12/00 is an internal document does not have sources. Change in functions is a cohesive entity to achieve a high level of productivity (Crawford, 2013:5).

- United States Congressional Record (2009:18779) defines military as the Territorial Army.
- Police refers to an organ that control crime, the managing of the health live of the society and the maintaining order (Reiner, 1992 cited in Farrall, Goldson, Loader & Dockley, 2016:166).
- Buchanan (2010:10), Haddadan-Moghadden (2012:10) cited in Khalifa (2013:13), explains that the word agency is normally linked with the structure and it refers to a level to which a structure is able to define the course of their action.
- Simsek (2011:20) states that instruction provides a meaningful organisational knowledge, to assist members in accomplishing the anticipated change performance through systematic guidance, along with a necessary instructional tool to carry to activities.

MP Agency (2007:iii) states that a failure to adhere to MP AI 12/00, amount to the contravention of section 19(5) Military Discipline Code (MDC) as this is an instruction which may lead to the military police official liable to conviction/imprisonment not exceeding six (6). Crawford (2013:8) argues the above point by stating that a thorough approach guideline for the document to steer the department should be:

- Enlighten, motivate and involve functional areas within the change department;
- Contribute to performance monitoring;
- Create a purpose that will support the strategy of the department;
- Initiate new methods to approach old challenges; and
- Serve as a framework for action plan decision.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is the MP 12/00?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.2.

**Table 3.2: Frequency table for the meaning of MP AI 12/00**

What is the MP AI 12/00?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
MP AI 12/00 is an instruction that addresses all techniques on how to prevent crime that is used by military police.				1	1		1				1			1		1		1	1		9	45%
MP AI 12/00 it document that consists of crime prevention guidelines and procedures for						1		1		1		1	1				1			1	6	30%

What is the MPAI 12/00?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Military Police Officials.																						
MPA12/00 I think its functional duty, is crime prevention.		1							1						1						3	15%
I do not know.	1		1																		2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

As it can be seen from the themes presented in Table 3.2, responses given by the participants were consistent with the literature consulted, Australian Corporations and Security Legislation (2012:1203) stating that instruction is an order, which outlines how a specific rule or command is to be done. The responses are as follows:

- MPAI 12/00 is an instruction that addresses all techniques on how to prevent crime that is used by military police (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- MPAI 12/00 is a document that consists of crime prevention guidelines and procedures for Military Police Officials (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- MPA12/00 I think it's functional duty, is crime prevention (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

The following responses are closely linked:

- MPAI 12/00 is an instruction that addresses all techniques on how to prevent crime that is used by military police (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- MPAI 12/00 is a document that consists of crime prevention guidelines and procedures for Military Police Officials (6 out of 20 = 30%); and
- MPA12/00 I think it's functional duty, is crime prevention (3 out of 20 = 15%).

The above responses of the participants are not in disagreement and supported by the literature consulted. World Health Organisation (2012:3) explaining that guidelines seek to provide advisory statements which assist both providers and

recipients in making a comprehensive decision about appropriate interventions for a change in practice.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, “What is MPAI 12/00?” the researcher is of the opinion that this participant unable to answer due to lack of on the job training which plays a role in reminding the members about work-related issues.

### 3.3.2 MPAI 12/00 overview of basic crime prevention strategies

Crime prevention guidelines and procedures for Military Police Officials should address programmes directed towards impacting primarily the general crime that can have a strong potential to negatively influence the public perception of law and order (CPSCR) (Crime Prevention Strategy Czech Republic, 2015:5).

**Table 3.3: MPAI 12/00 crime prevention strategies**

Patrols	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saturation patrol - combating specific type of crime in an area.</li> <li>• Call patrol – respond to complaints.</li> <li>• Routine patrol – random patrol without incident.</li> <li>• Sporadic patrol – reduce crime rate, maximise arrest.</li> <li>• Selective patrol – specialised patrolling with the aim to deploy members in the particular area.</li> </ul>
Roadblock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To restrict the mobility of criminality of stolen or prohibited items.</li> </ul>
Searches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To restrict criminality of prohibited items or stolen.</li> </ul>
Observation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This form of observation is aimed at catching the criminal in the act.</li> </ul>
Vehicle inspection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checking military vehicle for roadworthiness.</li> </ul>
Informers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recruiting civilian for information.</li> </ul>
Crime prevention awareness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Giving crime prevention lectures to the soldier community.</li> <li>• Distribution of pamphlets of crime awareness.</li> <li>• Films and videos of crime awareness.</li> </ul>
Crime prevention administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Crime stats in order to plan for crime prevention.</li> </ul>

(Source: Military Police Agency, 2007:3)

MPAI 12/00 entails the wide range of crime prevention preventative measures intended to reduce crime as far as possible, as illustrated in Table 3.3. It offers crime prevention strategies that the MPD believe that is the best philosophy for the future of their MP crime prevention section in structures; the different crime prevention measures are as written in MPAI 12/00.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What does MP 12/00 entail?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. Participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the answers of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.4.

**Table 3.4: Frequency table for what does MPAI 12/00 entail**

What does MPAI 12/00 entail?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It entails everything that we do as crime prevention, anything from admin, to the execution of patrols.		1			1	1	1			1			1	1	1	1	1				10	50%
Like I said it entails the step by step procedures as to how should we conduct.				1				1	1			1						1	1	1	7	35%
I do not know.	1		1								1										3	15%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.4, all the participants were asked, “What does MPAI 12/00 entail?” Answers given by the participants were with no disagreement, answers correspond and are relevant with the literature research, Crime prevention preventative measures are action-responds, means or actions taken before or after an incident have occurred to avoid reoccurrence (Ocean Editorial Board, 2010:427). The responses are as follows:

- It entails crime prevention strategies specifically patrol, roadblock, searches and observations (10 out of 20 = 50%);
- Like I said it entails the step by step procedures as to how should we conduct ourselves as military police officials in the act of crime prevention (7 out of 20 = 35%); and
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%).

Ten participants (10 out of 20 = 50%) showed common understanding regarding the explanation of what MPAI 12/00 entails, while seven participants (7 out of 20 = 35%) were not in disagreement with the view other participants with regard to what MPAI 12/00 entails. Their responses were relevant with the literature consulted and supported by the view of CPSCR (2015:5) stating that crime prevention strategies refer to methods, approaches, programmes directed to intensify capacity to fight against crime and maintain law and order.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question, "What does MPAI 12/00 entail?" the researcher is of the opinion that these participants are not well informed about MPAI 12/00 in their structure due to lack of on the job training.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "Is the MPAI 12/00 clear about the preventive action?" certain themes emerged the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.5.

**Table 3.5: Frequency table for the preventative measures**

Is the MPAI 12/00 clear about the preventive action?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer C.4																						
You see the MPAI, as I suggest it now. The MPAI 12/00 is something that you can apply it, to your way of planning it can actually adopt to any persons plan. It is what is the current situation on the ground because how sly can you be to get the criminal because if you do not adopt to					1			1		1		1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	12	60%

Is the MPAl 12/00 clear about the preventive action?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
the style of what criminal is, are you going to catch the criminal? So the clarity of your preventative action will depend on how you plan.																						
Yes, it is clear because we can execute patrols, roadblock and it guides us.	1	1		1			1										1				5	25%
As I have told I never read it, I am not in the position to answer this question.						1				1											2	10%
I do not know.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.5, responses given by the participants were with no disagreement, and relevant with the literature reviewed, Duff, Farmer, Marshall, Renzo and Tadros (2010:61) preventative measures involve any reasonable means taken to restrict harm or a risk of harm. The responses are as follows:

- You see the MPAl, as I suggest it now, MPAl 12/00 is something that you can apply it, to your way of planning it can actually adapt to any persons plan. It is what is the current situation on the ground because how sly can you be to get the criminal because if you do not adapt to the style of what criminal is, are you going to catch the criminal? So, the clarity of your preventative action will depend on how you plan (12 out of 20 = 60%);
- Yes, it is clear because we can execute patrols; roadblock and it guide us (5 out of 20 = 25%);
- As I have told I never read it, I am not in the position to answer this question (2 out of 20 = 10%); and

- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Twelve participants (12 out of 20 = 60%) indicated common comprehension regarding the explanation of the clarity of MPAl 12/00 on preventive action, although they acknowledge that MPAl 12/00 is not clear on preventative measures, they believe crime prevention is not about the clearness of the document but is about how you plan. Five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) are in disagreement with these participants; they say that MPAl 12/00 is clear as it guides them to execute patrols and roadblock as preventive. The above responses correspond with the literature consulted and supported by the view of .UNODC (2008:54) stating that planning for crime prevention is about impacting the problem, it must include assignments for the community that address each side of crime triangle.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) for some reason know to themselves these participants said they never read MPAl 12/00. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question asked, "Is the MPAl 12/00 clear about the preventive action?" The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to respond due to the lack of on the job training.

### **3.3.3 Crime prevention according to the MPAl**

Crime prevention strategies such as situational crime prevention and environmental design imply that the emphasis when implementing it should be placed on community involvement because these strategies entail the prevention of crime before it happens police need to do crime awareness (UNODC, 2008:48).

Proactive crime prevention elements are evidential in the MPAl 12/00. All patrol officers are encouraged to conduct a preliminary criminal investigation, identify problems of crime to be able to plan ahead (Military Police Agency, 2007:13). Fisher and Lab (2010:18) confirm the strength of proactive when they outline anticipation as all crime prevention initiatives that can be initiated before the crime can be committed; this simply means that anticipation can be taken as another factor added on crime prevention with a broader range of strategies. The strength of the proactiveness nature of this explanation is with "conduct preliminary criminal investigation," this to the researcher's mind is in anticipation of crime before it happens.



Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How does MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.6.

**Table 3.6: Frequency table for the MPAI 12/00 defining crime prevention**

How does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	#	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
I do not know.	1	1	1			1		1			1		1				1		1	1	10	50%
It defines crime prevention as all the activities that you must do as the Military Police crime prevention section member all the patrols, vehicle patrol, foot patrol and observation.				1	1		1					1			1						5	25%
MPAI 12/00 does not define crime prevention, Let me give you an example, I am going to take you to Pretoria West, people there do not dress the way that you dress. Now you must change your dressing to fit into the people, and to the environment, that is the way MPAI is written it what you to think and implement.									1	1						1					3	15%
MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention as zero tolerance to crime.														1							1	5%

How does the MPAl 12/00 define crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.5	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	#	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Is something that has a negative effect on other people and is prohibited by law.																		1			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.6, all the participants were asked, “How does MPAl 12/00 define crime prevention?” Responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and were relevant to the literature reviewed. The MP Agency (2007:2) explains crime prevention as a wide range of activities to reduce crime as far as possible, using co-ordinated efforts to ensure a common understanding in the Department of Defence (Defence community). The responses are as follows:

- It defines crime prevention of military police as the task to co-ordinate crime prevention in the DoD or SANDF (5 out of 20 = 25%);
- I do not know (10 out of 20 = 50%);
- MPAl 12/00 does not define crime prevention. Let me give you an example, I am going to take you to Pretoria West, and people there do not dress the way that you dressed. Now you must change your dressing to fit into the crowd, and to the environment, that is the way MPAl is written it what you think and implement (3 out of 20 = 15%)’
- MPAl 12/00 defines crime prevention as zero tolerance to crime (number of times answered 1 and frequency 5%); and
- Is something that has a negative effect on other people and is prohibited by law (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Ten participants (10 out of 20 = 50%) were unable to respond to the question, “How does MPAl 12/00 define crime prevention?” The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to lack of on the job training in their

working environment, which could empower these members of certain MP related issues.

Although there were dissimilarities from the three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%), they responded by giving an example as an answer to the above question:

“MPAI 12/00 does not define crime prevention, let me give you an example: I am going to take you to Pretoria West, and people there do not dress the way that you dress. Now you must change your dressing to fit into the crowd, and to the environment, that is the way MPAI is written it what you to think and implement.”

This response is not necessarily incorrect because according to Schneider (2015:6), crime prevention is vague, it can mean different thing to different people.

In their response to the above question, five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) provided this answer to the question, “MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention of military police as the task to co-ordinate crime prevention in the DoD or SANDF.” This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by (MP Agency, 2007:2).

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) response to the question was, “MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention as zero tolerance to crime,” and another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, “MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention something that has a negative effect on other people and is prohibited by law.” The two participants are not necessarily incorrect; the researcher is of the view that these participants lack the insight of the document due to lack of on the job training.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?” certain themes emerged the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.7.

**Table 3.7: Frequency table for the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view**

Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.6	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		10	11	12	#	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Patrols are visible everybody can see the Military Police are on the outlook for offender although we are few, but we try to be proactive.				1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	16	80%
I do not know.	1	1																1			3	15%
I do not want to say yes or no because I have never read it.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D).

According to the interpretations of Table 3.7, all the participants were asked, “Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?” the underneath answers were provided by the participants to the question and did not correspond with the literature research. The responses are as follows:

- Patrols are visible everybody can see the Military Police are on the outlook for offender although we are few; we try to be proactive (16 out of 20 = 80%);
- I do not know (2 out of 20 = 10%);
- I do not want to say yes or no because I have never read it (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- No, it does not (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%) responded to the question, “Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?” by saying, “Patrols are visible everybody can see the MP are on the outlook for offenders although we are few, we try to be proactive.” Hill and Paynich (2014:81) argue the value of routine patrols has little to offer in preventing crime or deter crime.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) were unable to respond to the question, “Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?” The researcher is of the opinion that the participant was unable to answer due to lack of on the job training, which could empower these members of certain MP related issues. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the question by saying, “MPAI does not define crime prevention from the proactive point of view,” this participant did not want to motivate the answer. Another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, “I do not want to say yes or no because I have never read it,” the researcher does not want to conclude but is of the opinion that these participants are not motivated enough in their working environment.

### **3.4 THE CONSTITUTIONAL MANDATE OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL DEFENCE FORCE (SANDF) REGARDING CRIME PREVENTION**

In terms of South Africa, (1996:sec. 200(2)) stipulates that the primary objectives of the Defence Force are to defend and protect the Republic, its territorial integrity and its people in accordance with the Constitution and principles of international law regulating the use of force. This is the main primary function of the Defence Force; the Constitution does not mention any tasking of the Defence Force as the secondary function.

However, with regard to the SANDF Constitutional mandate on crime prevention, South Africa, (1996:sec. 201(a)) in conjunction with South Africa (2002:sec. 20(2)) advocates the employment of the SANDF in support of the SAPS when the need arises on the following:

- Prevention of crime
- Maintenance of law and order
- Preservation of the internal security of the Republic

However, according to the South Africa (2002:sec. 20(1)), members of the Defence Force have the same powers and duties as those conferred or imposed upon a member of the employed for these services contemplated in South Africa (1996:sec. 201(2)) read with (South Africa, 2002:sec. 18(1)):

- Preservation of lives, health or property in an emergency or humanitarian relief operation;
- Ensure the provision of essential service;
- Support any department of the state including support for socio-economic upliftment; and
- Effect of national border control.

In terms of South Africa, (1996:sec. 200(1)) states that the Defence Force must be structured and managed as a disciplined military force, but this section does not clarify whose task is it maintain the Defence Force as the disciplined military force. Chapter 5 of South Africa (2002) Defence Act 42, advocates that the Military Police entity will execute the task of maintaining the discipline in the Defence Force within the SANDF proclaimed military areas. The legislative mandate of the MPs is from South Africa (2002), a synthesis of the two, South Africa (1996:sec. 200(1)) and South Africa (2002:sec. 30(1)) was not done, so as to create credibility of the (South Africa, 2002:sec. 30(1)).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What does the constitution of South Africa (1996) require from you as a member of the SANDF regarding crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.8.

**Table 3.8: Frequency table for the Constitutional mandate of the SANDF**

What does the constitution of South Africa (1996) require from you as a member of the SANDF regarding crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Protect the inhabitants of South Africa and uphold the law, in terms of sec 201(2) (n) of the constitution we can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in cooperation with the SAPS.	1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1		1	1	1	15	75%
The constitution advocate that the SANDF must be a disciplined force, therefore, the Military Police is the entity that must do crime prevention to maintain the SANDF as a disciplined force.				1									1				1				3	15%
Combat crime.			1																		1	5%
I do not know.		1																			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.8, all the participants were asked, “What does the constitution of South Africa (1996) requires from you as a member of the SANDF regarding crime prevention?” Answers given by the participants were with no disagreement, answers correspond and are relevant with the literature research, according to Montesh and Basdeo (2012:78). In terms of South Africa (1996:sec. 200(2)) the primary objectives of the defence force is to defend and protect the

Republic, its territorial integrity and its people accordance with the constitution and principles of international law. The responses are as follows:

- Protect the inhabitants of South Africa and uphold the law, in terms of South Africa, (1996:sec. 201(2)) we can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in co-operation with the SAPS (15 out of 20 = 75%);
- The constitution advocate that the SANDF must be a disciplined force, therefore, the Military Police is the entity that must do crime prevention to maintain the SANDF as a disciplined force (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- Combat crime (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Fifteen participants (15 out of 20 = 75%) responded to the question by saying, "The constitution advocate the SANDF must be a disciplined force. Therefore, the Military Police is the entity that must do crime prevention to maintain the SANDF as a disciplined force." This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by (South Africa, 1996:sec. 200(2)).

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) responses were in agreement, and these participants responded to the question by saying, "The constitution advocates that the SANDF must be a disciplined force. Therefore, the Military Police is the entity that must do crime prevention to maintain the SANDF as a disciplined force." This answer intertwined with the literature consulted and supported by South Africa, (1996:sec. 200(1)), of which the MPs believe that this is the reason why SANDF have this entity of the MPO.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) provided, combat crime as an answer to the question, this answer is not necessarily wrong. The researcher believes that this participant could not answer due to lack of on the job training that should have been done to capacitate these members with the insight of the MP environment. Another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, "What does the constitution of South Africa (1996) require from you as a member of the SANDF regarding crime prevention." The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer due lack the on the job training, which could have empowered the member of certain MP related issues.



### 3.4.1 The relevance of MPAl 12/00 in terms of the Constitution

According to the researcher, MPAl 12/00 ideology is relevant to the Constitution, although in the Constitution there is no provision made to structure the MPs, South Africa, (1996:sec. 200(2)) incorporates all the various components of the Defence Force under one umbrella of the SANDF. Therefore, to the researcher's mind, this means that the MPAl 12/00 was supposed to address the bill of right before addressing the crime prevention. This view is supported by Rosner and Scott (2017:937) elucidating that crime prevention legal framework must be enhanced by the bill of right, as the bill of rights enhances good policing.

MPAl 12/00 does not supplement the Constitution; it is parallel to the Constitution; however, South Africa (2002) complements the Constitutional SANDF mandate. The MPAl 12/00 is written out of one of the obligations of the MPs mentioned in terms of the (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(1)(b)). This gives the MPs the functional mandate on crime prevention, therefore MPAl 12/00 supplement the (South Africa, 2002).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "Is the MPAl 12/00 consistent with the Constitution?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.9.

**Table 3.9: Frequency table for the relevance of MPAl 12/00 in term of the Constitution**

Is the MPAl 12/00 consistent with the Constitution? (Motive your answer).	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Yes, as I answered you in answer number C.7 in South Africa, (1996: sec	1			1	1				1	1	1		1				1			1	9	45%

Is the MPAl 12/00 consistent with the Constitution? (Motive your answer).	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
201(2) (n)) we can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in cooperation with the SAPS.																						
No, because there is nowhere in the MPAl 12/00 that the policy framework is defined.						1	1	1							1	1		1			6	30%
I do not know.			1									1		1					1		4	20%
In some thoughts, I think yes because I am not sure I did not read the MPAl I do not want to say yes or no.		1																		1	1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

As it can be seen from the themes presented in Table 3.9, responses given by the participants were in disagreement, some answers were relevant with the literature research, South Africa, (1996:sec. 201(a)) in conjunction with South Africa (2002:sec. 20(2)) mandates the employment of the SANDF in support of the SAPS on crime prevention operations. The participants' responses are as follows:

- Yes, as I answered you in answer number C.12 in terms of South Africa, (1996:sec. 201(2)) we can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in co-operation with the SAPS (9 out of 20= 45%);
- No, because there is nowhere in the MPAl 12/00 that the policy framework is defined (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- I do not know (4 out of 20 = 20%); and

- In some thought I think yes because I am not sure I did not read the MPAI, I do not want to say yes or no (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%) responded to question by saying, “In terms of sec. 201(2) of the constitution we can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in co-operation with the SAPS.” This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by (South Africa, 1996:sec. 201(2)(a)).

Six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%) in their responses to the question, “Is the MPAI 12/00 consistent with the Constitution?” they responded to the question by saying, “No, because there is nowhere in the MPAI 12/00 that the policy framework is defined.” This answer is not necessarily incorrect; the researcher is of the opinion that good guidelines must be unable to disseminate correct information, in the way that staff members understand it, to help the organisation to succeed.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) were unable to respond to the question asked, “Is the MPAI 12/00 consistent with the Constitution?” the researcher is of the opinion that the participants were unable to answer due lack of on the job training, which could empower the member of certain MP related issues if correctly done.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, “In some thoughts, I think yes because I am not sure I did not read the MPAI I do not want to say yes or no.” In the researcher’s view, this is significant in that it implies MPAI 12/00 is not detailed, the inference drawn from this participant by the researcher is that if the instruction or guideline is not detailed it confusing members on the ground, as executors, they would not be able to execute the instruction.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Does the MPAI 12/00 address the requirements as stipulated in South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1))?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.10.

**Table 3.10: Frequency table for the relevance of MPAI 12/00 in terms of (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(1))**

Does the MPAI 12/00 address the requirements as stipulated in Section 31(1) of the Defence Act 42 of 2002?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer C.9																						
South Africa (2002: sec 31(1)) advocates the Military Police to maintain law and order, prevent crime within our proclaimed area; and this is what we are doing then MPAI 12/00 does address the need.	1	1	1		1	1		1		1	1	1	1	1	1		1		1	1	16	80%
I will say no because in the MPAI 12/00 there is nowhere were MP framework is discussed. I believe MPAI 12/00 was supposed to be written in the sense that clarifies issues to me, now policy framework is left out.																1		1			2	10%
The importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within the military environment is that once we leave everything to chance, people will always exploit the opportunity.				1																	1	5%
MPAI 12/00 to me it is guidelines not detailed so some stage we use the Commanders initiative.	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.10, all the participants were asked, “Does the MPAI 12/00 address the requirements as stipulated in South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1))? Answers given by the participants were with no contradictions and were relevant with the literature consulted, South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)(a)) stipulates that military police officials may perform any police function, which includes the prevention of crime. The responses are as follows:

- South Africa, (2002:sec. 31(1)) advocates the Military Police maintain law and order, prevent crime with our proclaimed area; and this is what we are doing then MPA 12/00 does address the need (16 out of 20 = 80%);
- I will say no because in the MPAI 12/00 there is nowhere where MP framework is discussed, I believe MPAI 12/00 was supposed to be written in the sense that clarifies issues to me, now policy framework is left out (2 out of 20 = 10%);
- The importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within the military environment is that once we leave everything to chance, people will always exploit the opportunity (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- MPAI 12/00 to me, it is guidelines not detailed so some stage we use the Commander's initiative (1 out of 20 = 5%).

In their response to the above question, sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%) pointed out the relevance of MPAI 12/00 in term of South Africa, (2002: sec 31(1)) by explaining that “South Africa, (2002:sec. 31(1)) advocates the Military Police maintain law and order, prevent crime with our proclaimed areas.” This explanation is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by (South Africa, 2002).

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question by saying, “MPAI 12/00 is irrelevant to (South Africa, 2002), due to the factor that South Africa (2002) is not referred to in the MPAI 12/00.” One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, they use the commander initiative as MPAI 12/00 is not detailed. These answers are not necessarily incorrect; the inference draws from these responses by the researcher is that good commanders speak to the followers and make them understand what is wanted from them. Crawford (2013:36) states good guidelines integrate individuals, must have substance, comprehensive, realistic, deliver valid content, clearly state objective and priorities.

Another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, "The importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within the military environment is that once we leave everything to chance, people will always exploit the opportunity," this response is not necessarily incorrect; the researcher is of the view that this participant could not give the correct response due to the lack of on the job training within the working environment.

### **3.5 THE PRIMARY OBJECTIVES OF THE MILITARY POLICE REGARDING CRIME PREVENTION**

MP Agency (2007:2) points out that military police has distinctive, unique activities, including that internal strategy that involves the wide range of social institutions in the defence community with the view to eliminate crime as far as possible as South Africa is characterised by the high levels of crime which affects all sectors of society. According to MP Agency (2007:2), there are five patrolling strategies used by the Military Police as measures to reduce crime,

- Call patrols- Respond to complaints;
- Sporadic patrols- Reduce crime rate, maximise arrest;
- Saturation patrols combating- Specific type of crime in an area;
- Specialised patrols- The aim to deploy members in the particular area; and
- General or routine patrols- Aimed at deterring potential criminals by creating the impression of omnipresence.

South Africa (1998:47) states that South African National Defence Force does not have powers to arrest, detention, search and seizure. This above statement can be argued, according to South Africa (2002:sec. 20(1)), whenever the Defence Force or any portion or member thereof has been employed for contemplated in South Africa (1996:sec. 201(2)) or (1996:sec. 18(1)(a)(b)(c)(d)) states that a member of the Defence for who is utilised for the execution of service under such employment has the same power and duties as those conferred or imposed upon a member of the SAPS.

What must be clarified here is that a member of the of the Defence Force including the Military Police may arrest or detain any person or seize any article or object, what must happen thereafter as soon as possible that person or article or object

must be handed to the SAPS. Military Police Officials are required to perform police duties in the military proclaimed areas, while performing these functions it is expected for them to have the same competency as the South African Police Services (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(2)(a)).

Therefore, the researcher believes that synthesis of the functions of the MP and SAPS should have been done. The objective of police is the same to support the government initiative to tackle the high level of crime that poses a serious threat to all sectors of society (NCPS, 1996:2), although the MP functions within military proclaimed areas. The researcher believes that by virtue of South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) delegation of authority implies that Military Police Officials must plan and implement crime prevention strategies within military proclaimed environment to address the crime threats issues.

The primary objective of the MP with regard to crime prevention is to tackle crime within the military proclaimed environment. MP Agency (2007:2) describes the five patrolling strategies which are to be conducted particularly by MP crime prevention sections at all MP structures. Patrolling is the priority to increase the visibility police (MP crime prevention sections) as informed by their crime prevention management statistics to enable them to identify crime patterns and tendencies to improve the effectiveness of visible policing (South Africa Police Services Strategic Plan 2010, 2014:12).

Military Police Agency (2007:2) describes the distribution of pamphlets, lectures (Public education) as the form of mobilising the community Military Police serves in the fight against crime where the tendency or anticipation for the crime to occur. South Africa (2011:20) concurs with this view base on that social crime prevention states that police should provide interventions on communities who are at risk and care to vulnerable families.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What are the primary objectives of the Military Police regarding crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended

question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.11.

**Table 3.11: Frequency table for primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention**

What are the primary objectives of the Military Police regarding crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention are strategic priorities to address crime make DoD environment a free crime area.			1	1	1		1	1	1		1	1	1	1		1	1		1	1	14	70%
Reduce or eliminate crime if possible.										1					1			1			3	15%
The primary objectives the way I understand it includes consultation with the community.						1															1	5%
I can say primary objectives of the Military Police is to prevent crime and to investigate crime to the last and to ... not to let people go to court with the person who is not even guilty or something like that.		1																			1	5%
I do not know.	1																				1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.11, all the participants were asked, “What are the primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention?” in order to determine whether the participants understand their core business as MPO. The responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and were consistent with the literature reviewed. The primary objective of the Military Police



with regard to crime prevention is to co-ordinate and prevents crime, initiating crime prevention programs and strategies (MP Agency, 2007:2). The participants' responses are as follows:

- Primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention are strategic priorities to address crime, make DoD environment a free crime area (14 out of 20 = 70%);
- Reduce or eliminate crime if possible (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- The primary objectives the way I understand it includes consultation with the community (1 out of 20 = 5%);
- I can say primary objectives of the Military Police is to prevent crime and to investigate crime to the last and to ... not to let people go to court with the person who is not even guilty or something like that (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

According to the responses provided by fourteen participants (14 out of 20 = 70%), the primary objective of the MP is strategies that can be employed to make the military area safe. This response is second by three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) who responded by saying, "The primary objective is to eliminate crime." The above answers intertwined and relevant with the literature consulted. One of the broad dimensions of the White Paper on Safety and Security (1998:9) point out that law enforcement can only be effective through visible policing.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the question by saying, "The primary objectives means community consultation" whereas another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, "I can say primary objectives of the Military Police is prevent crime and investigating crime." The responses provided by these participants intertwined with the literature consulted. SAPS Strategy Plan (2010-2014:13) states that mobilising the community is one of the priority objectives with regard to crime prevention as it promotes social cohesion, establishes and develop partnerships with the community.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question asked, "What the primary objectives of the MP regarding crime prevention are?" The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer the question

due to lack of on the job training, which could have reminded this member of certain job-related issues.

### 3.6 THE LINK BETWEEN THE AIM OF THE MPAl 12/00 AND THAT OF THE NATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION STRATEGY

The aim is defined as the reason for doing something and is what the person pursues to attain or achieve (Ashworth, 2011:83). The aim of the MPAl 12/00 is to disseminate crime prevention strategies to the MPD crime prevention structures for them to combat criminality (Military Police Agency, 2007:2). According to South Africa (1996:2), the NCPS aim is to prevent crime from occurring; it is a wider shared responsibility approach to fight against crime.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "Is there a link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.12.

**Table 3.12: Frequency table for the link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS**

Is there a link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer C.11																						
Yes even it is guidelines, but the objective is to prevent crime.				1				1	1	1			1	1		1	1				8	40%
I do not know.	1	1	1		1						1	1			1					1	8	40%
MPAl 12/00 is not specific.						1	1												1		3	15%
No.																		1			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 3.12, all the participants were asked, “Is there a link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS?” the responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and relevant with the literature research. According to the researchers’ point of view, the aim of MPAl 12/00 and the NCPS links, the strength of both is with the end result of preventing criminality from happening and disseminating information for a wider shared responsibility approach of the fight against crime. This view is supported by the ideal objective of the same NCPS, which recommends the establishment of a comprehensive crime prevention policy framework that is going to draw all the government agencies against the fight of crime (South Africa, 1996:2). The responses are as follows:

- Yes, even it is guidelines, but the objective is to prevent crime (8 out of 20 = 40%);
- I do not know (8 out of 20 = 40%);
- MPAl 12/00 is not specific (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- No (1 out of 20 = 5%).

The majority participants responded to the question “Is there a link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS” eight participants (8 out of 20 = 40%) answered as follows, “Yes, even it is guidelines, but the objective is to prevent crime.” This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by MP Agency (2007:2).

Another eight participants (8 out of 20 = 40%) were unable to respond to the question, “Is there a link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS.” These participants were not able to respond not necessarily because they are not knowledgeable, the researcher is of the opinion that this is due to the lack of on the job training within the working environment. The researcher has established that there is lack of on the job training because other participants did mention that they last attended crime prevention courses during their year of basic training in 1994.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) responded by saying, “MPAl 12/00 is not specific,” this answer is vague not to say it is incorrect. One participant (1 out of 20

= 5%) responded by saying, “There is no link between the aim of the MPAl 12/00 and that of the NCPS” this participant could not substantiate the response further.

### **3.6.1 The alignment of the vision statement of the MPD to that of the NCPS regarding crime prevention**

Steinberg (2014:148) states that the vision statement is shared governing principles, enlightening the way forward to attain goals of the department. South Africa (1996:2) adopted the vision statement of the National Development Plan, which states that by 2030 South Africa shall be a society in which all the people will live in the safe environment, having no fear of crime.

The MPD does not have a vision statement with regard to crime prevention; the researcher perused the MP 12/00 in research of the vision statement but could not find one. Except the vision statement in the MP Agency (2002:1) which read as, “The vision of MP Agency is to attain a crime free and disciplined Department of Defence” this vision statement is not specific as the researcher cannot confirm it as referring to crime prevention or whether the entire MPD. A strategy should align itself with its mission, vision and explain how the two will be carried out (Steinberg, 2014:148).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statements of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention?” Certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.13.

**Table 3.13: Frequency table for the vision statement of the MP Division to that of the NCPS regarding crime prevention**

Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statement of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Yes, it is (elaborate) remember within us we are working with different law enforcement agencies. The guidelines that we also inherit the strategy that we plan on it is based on the national crime because remember crime as it happens outside it has the influence within the military and the people of the military also has influence on the environmental outside.		1			1	1			1	1	1			1		1		1			9	45%
As far as MPAI 12/00 is concern, none of vision statement is discussed in it.							1					1							1	1	4	20%
I do not know.											1			1		1					3	15%
No, it is not.	1																	1			2	10%
I am not sure because I never read MPAI 12/00.			1			1															2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.13, all the participants were asked, “Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statement of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention?” to establish whether the participants have an understanding of the vision statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention to that of the NCPS. Responses given by the participants were not according to the

literature consulted; Kirkpatrick (2016:2) states that the vision statement is the idealistic idea of how important issue would look, if things were perfectly addressed for the department long-term achievement. The responses are as follows:

- Yes, it is (elaborate) remember within us we are working with different law enforcement agencies so the guidelines that we also inherit ... the strategy that we plan on it is based on the national crime, because remember crime as it happens outside, it has the influence within the military and the people of the military also has an influence on the environmental outside (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- As far as MPAI 12/00 is concerned, none of the vision statement is discussed in it (4 out of 20 = 20%);
- I do not know (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- No, it is not (2 out of 20 = 10%); and
- I am not sure because I never read MPAI 12/00 (2 out of 20 = 5%).

Nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%) responded to the question, "Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statements of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention" by saying "MPD vision statement with regard to crime prevention is based on the national crime one as MPD works with different law enforcement agencies." This response is relevant to the literature consulted and supported by the view of Kirkpatrick (2016:2) defining the vision statement as a future shared governing principle of the department.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded to the question, by saying, "As far as MPAI 12/00 is concerned none of the vision statement is discussed in it." These participants response is correct MP 12/00 is not detailed, and that is the reason other participants they cannot respond to the question asked by the researcher as there are working in level 4, not level 2 which is policymakers for level 4.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question, by saying "The vision of the MPD in crime prevention is not in line with that of NCPS." Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to respond to the question; the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to lack of on the job training and also for the reason that it is nowhere written on their level of execution. Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question,

by saying, “I am not sure because I never read MPAl 12/00,” the researcher is of the view that these participants are not well motivated to read instructions.

### 3.6.2 The involvement of the Military Police in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS

Crime level in South Africa is depriving all the inhabitants of South Africa including the soldiers’ community of their rights and dignity as entrenched in the Constitution. It is for this reason why South Africa (1996:5) states the plea of the government for all the department to make a contribution to NCPS with regard to the prevention of crime and to create crime prevention capacity. The researcher believes that the MPD is responding to this paradigm shift as required by the government when preventing crime within the military areas because this call is meant for all the departments.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.14.

**Table 3.14: Frequency table for the MP involvement in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS**

Does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
No, it does not.	1		1	1	1			1	1			1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	14	70%
According to me as Military Police is an entity within the Army may be the NCPS involve us under SANDF.						1	1			1							1				4	20%
I do not know.		1									1										2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.14, all the participants were asked, “Does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?” and responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and corresponded with the literature research. One of the objectives of South Africa (1996:5) states that a mutual understanding amongst the South Africans of what crime prevention is should be generated as for how the South Africans are going to tackle crime. The researcher is of the view that by virtue of this NCPS objective, the magnitude of crime challenge was not underestimated by the MPD, which is why MPs are preventing crime within their military proclaimed areas in support of the NCPS. The responses are as follows:

- No, it does not (14 out of 20 = 70%);
- According to me as Military Police is an entity within the Army may be the NCPS involve us under SANDF (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- I do not know (2 out of 20 = 10%).

Fourteen participants (14 out of 20 = 70%) responded to the question by saying, “The NCPS does not involve the MPs in crime prevention.” This answer is not necessarily wrong but is not support them by any literature consulted; the researcher is of the view that these participants lack the SANDF insight due to lack of refresher course as some of this members never attended any advance crime prevention course since 1994.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded to the question, “Does the NCPS involve the MP in crime,” by saying, “According to me as Military Police is an entity within the Army may be the NCPS involve us under SANDF.” This response is relevant with the literature consulted and supported by the view of Singh (2008:16) stating that the SANDF is one of the departments identified by NCPS to collaborate with the SAPS on anti-crime projects.

The SANDF is involved with pillar 1 and 4 of the NCPS dealing with certain and rapid justice and as well as with regional co-operation stability and cross-border crime in co-operation with the SAPS (South Africa, 1996:51). MPs are not mentioned in the NCPS only the mother body which is SANDF. The NCPS failed to give the guideline of the role to be played by the components of the mother body.



This above statement is seconded by Omar (2010:2) stating that the NCPS created confusion concerning the role of consultation, partnerships and coordination of all the departments, as it is too wide and ambitious.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) were unable to respond to the question; the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to the lack of understanding strategies and defence regulatory documents such as South Africa (2002).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.15.

**Table 3.15: Frequency table of how MPs are involved in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS**

How does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer C.14																						
It involves the whole SANDF and we derived our tasking from SANDF.	1				1		1	1	1	1			1		1		1				9	45%
I do not know.		1	1								1	1		1		1					6	30%
It does not, we just adopt it.				1														1		1	3	15%
It is not clear how does the NCPS involve the Military Police because it is not written on the MPAI 12/00 then that put me on the difficult stand to give you an answer because now I must use assumption which is not right.																			1		1	5%

How does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.14	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
I believe the goal of the NCPS is to eliminate crime, even we are not involved by the NCPS but we are police, and we fight crime.						1															1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.15, all the participants were asked, “How does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?” Answers provided by the participants were with no disagreement, answers correspond and are relevant with the literature research. According to the NCPS (1996:24), the SANDF has formulated a comprehensive internal security strategy which includes a crime prevention component to carry out crime prevention activities, these activities involve all army of the SANDF and provide for joint planning and execution with the SAPS. The responses are as follows:

- It involves the whole SANDF, and we derived our tasking from SANDF (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- I do not know (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- It does not we just adopt it (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- It is not clear how does the NCPS involve the Military Police because it is not written on the MPAl 12/00 then that put me on the difficult stand to give you an answer because now I must use assumption which is not right (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- I believe the goal of the NCPS is to eliminate crime, even we are not involved by the NCPS but we are police, and we fight crime (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%) responded to the question, “How does the NCPS involve the MP in crime prevention?” by saying, “It involves the whole SANDF, and we derived our tasking from SANDF.” This response is consistent with

the literature consulted and supported by the NCPS (1996:4) stating that strategy was by an interdepartmental strategy team that which included the SANDF.

Six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%) were unable to respond to the question; the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to lack of on the job training, which could empower these members as these members some of them since attended crime prevention during basis training 1994. Whereas another three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) responded by saying, "The NCPS does not involve the MP in crime prevention, MPs just adopt it," this response is not necessarily incorrect, it is too vague, and the participants did not explain how MPs adopt it.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, "It is not clear how does the NCPS involve the MPs," and another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) is of the belief that the goal of the NCPS is to eliminate crime, even we are not involved by the NCPS but we are police, and we fight crime." This response is consistent with the literature consulted and supported by the objective of the NCPS (1996:5) stating that all departments must develop a common understanding of what crime prevention, to tackle it.

### **3.7 THE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE CONTENT OF THE MPAI 12/00 ON THE CURRENT DEMOCRATIC MODERN POLICING WITHIN THE SANDF**

Crawford (2013:11) explains that the strategy document (in this case MPAI 12/00 instruction) are those documents which are subject ready, they should focus on the content that needs to be produced and articulate a successful functional approach driven by the agreed functional objective, this document must pass three critical tests:

- Feasibility– Achievable and sustainable for the future
- Acceptability– By all the key players
- Suitability– Address all key point to meet the current need

The effectiveness of the content of MPAI 12/00 on the current democratic modern policing within the SANDF does not allow the crime prevention section to exploit opportunities, instead it increases threats as it does not cover various crime

prevention techniques or approaches such as sector policing, situational crime prevention, community policing and does not go over a milestone to causation.

The current content does not cater to ways of improving crime prevention. The current content does not articulate what do we want to achieve and how to achieve that. Meaning that the current content does not cover the vision, mission, and objectives that fit modern policing. The content of a good modern policing must be based on human rights and articulate laws that would improve the establishment and maintenance of order (Emsley, 2016:107). According to Crawford (2013:12), the content for a successful strategy must be able to close gaps and should have subject matter headings as a guide, as illustrated in Figure 3.1 below, (in this case MPAI 12/00 instruction):



**Figure 3.1: The produce for a successful strategy**

(Source: Crawford, 2012)

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Is the information contained in the MPAI 12/00 relevant to the current requirements of the new democratic policing style or philosophy?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.16.

**Table 3.16: Frequency table for the effectiveness of the content of the MPAl 12/00 on the current democratic modern policing within the SANDF**

Is the information contained in the MPAl 12/00 relevant to the current requirements of the new democratic policing style or philosophy?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer C.15	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
The information is not current maybe a review must be done on it; to see what is still current. No, it must be upgraded somewhere it must be amended, correctly because the way we work sometimes I ask myself is what I am doing current.					1	1	1	1				1	1		1	1		1	1		10	50%
The MPAl remains the basic it is the starting block whether I have done crime prevention twenty years ago or whether I am going to do crime prevention tomorrow, the MPAl is the starting block of how to start thinking and how to start planning. Relevance is about how you plan out of your thinking.	1			1					1	1	1			1			1			1	8	40%
I do not know.		1	1																		2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.16, all the participants were asked, “Is the information contained in the MPAl 12/00 relevant to the current requirements of the new democratic policing style or philosophy?” responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and relevant with the literature reviewed. According to Guzman, Das and Das (2014:5), the modern policing content in the

democratic society must be based on human rights as articulated by the law; it must guide the police to serve the state and protect the public through proactive activities.

The participants' responses are as follows:

- The information is not current maybe a review must be done on it; to see what is still current (10 out of 20 = 50%);
- The MPAl remains the basic it is the starting block whether I have done crime prevention twenty years ago or whether I am going to do crime prevention tomorrow, the MPAl is the starting block of how to start thinking and how to start planning and relevance is about how you plan out of your thinking (8 out of 20 = 40%); and
- I do not know (2 out of 20 = 10%).

The majority of participants responded to the question, "Is the information contained in the MPAl 12/00 relevant to the current requirements of the new democratic policing style or philosophy?" Ten participants (10 out of 20 = 50%) responded as follows, "The information is not current maybe a review must be done on it; to see what is still current." This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by Crawford (2013:12). Figure 3.1 in one of the pyramids illustrate that the information of the strategy (in this case MPAl 12/00) must be updated, to be current and fill the gaps.

Although eight participants (8 out of 20 = 40%) responded to the question, by saying:

"The MPAl remains the basic it is the starting block whether I have done crime prevention twenty years ago or whether I am going to do crime prevention tomorrow, the MPAl 12/00 is the starting block of how to start thinking and how to start planning, relevance is about how you plan out of your thinking."

These participants believe that MPAl 12/00 is relevant as it is guidelines more should come out of their thinking. This view is not supported by any literature.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) were unable to respond to the question; the researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer due to lack of on the job training, which could empower these members of certain MP related issues as some of these members last attended basic crime prevention 1994.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Is the MPAl 12/00 relevant to crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.17.

**Table 3.17: Frequency table of the relevance of MP 12/00 to crime prevention**

Is the MPAl 12/00 relevant to crime prevention? (Motivate your answer).	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
<b>Answer C.16</b>																						
As I said the relevant of MPAl 12/00 rests on us crime prevention is flexible it only needs initiative.	1	1	1	1	1		1									1	1		1		9	45%
I cannot say yes, or no, the MPAl is the starting block of how to start thinking, how to start planning, how to execute the plan comes from within you, taking the starting block of MPAl 12/00 and creating a new plan and the new strategy of how to keep crime prevention.	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1		1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	6	30%
Like I said it supposed to be, but I feel there is more information left out that was supposed to be there so that it will be easy for us to perform our duties.									1				1		1			1			4	20%
I do not know.											1										1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.17, all the participants were asked, “Is the MPAI 12/00 relevant to crime prevention?” To establish whether the participants understand the relevance of MPAI 12/00 to crime prevention, responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and relevant to the literature researched. According to Crawford (2013:25) for a strategic document to be relevant to the department, it must have the following attributes.

- Provide a framework for understanding;
- Key framework to deliver quality and consistent service to the department;
- Minimise unrealistic expectations;
- Simplify complex issues; and
- Reduce areas of conflict.

The participants’ responses are as follows:

- As I said the relevant of MPAI 12/00 rests on us crime prevention is flexible it only needs initiative (9 out of 20 = 45%);
- I cannot say yes or no, the MPAI is the starting block of how to start thinking, how to start planning, how to execute the plan comes from within you, taking the starting block of MPAI 12/00 and creating a new plan and the new strategy of how to keep crime prevention (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- Like I said it supposed to be, but I feel there is more information left out that was supposed to be there so that it will be easy to us to perform our duties (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Nine participants (9 out of 20 = 45%) and six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%) showed great understanding with regard to the relevancy of MPAI 12/00 to crime prevention. Both the frequency participants believe that the relevancy of MPAI rest with them and is them who must come up with initiatives to crime prevention. Both views of these participants correspond with the literature consulted and supported by the view of Joyce (2013:80) states that police initiative was encouraged in America during the 60’s to reduce crime which resulted in the birth of neighbourhood watch, that was the initiative put forward by the police.



Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) in their responses they felt that there is more information left out of MPAI 12/00 which was supposed to be there so that it will be easy for them to perform their duties. Crawford (2013:12) the illustrated Figure 3.1 demonstrates that information written in the guideline or instruction should be updated. One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question. The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer due to lack of clarity and understanding of MPAI 12/00 due to lack of on the job training, which could empower these members of certain MP related issues.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "To what extent does the HQ of the MP Division involve you to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 3.18.

**Table 3.18: Frequency table of the extent of the MP Division involving crime prevention members to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised**

To what extent does the HQ of the MP Division involve you to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer C.17																						
No, MP Division does not involve us when they revise these documents.	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	19	95%
Six months prior to the process of revision the HQ normal request for inputs.					1																1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 3.18, all the participants were asked, "To what extent does the HQ of the MPD involve you to give inputs when the MPAI

12/00 is revised?" The researcher asked this question to establish whether the participants understand the importance of the HQ to involve them when MPAI 12/00 is revised. Responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and collaborated with the literature reviewed. For any change or review, SWOT analysis must be done to evaluate the service provided before SWOT review is carried out, there is needs to compare the service to the objective and vision of the department, it is vital to have inputs (Crawford, 2013:34). The participants' responses are as follows:

- No, MP Division does not involve us when they revise these documents (19 out of 20 = 95%).
- Six months prior to the process of revision the HQ normal request for inputs (1 out of 20 = 5%).

The majority of nineteen participants (19 out of 20 = 95%) responded to the question, "To what extent does the HQ of the MP Division involve you to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised?", by saying, "No, MP Division does not involve us when they revise these documents. One Participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, "Six months prior to the process of revision the HQ normal request for inputs."

Both responses are supported by the view of Crawford (2013:9) stating that strategic settings are done by the head of the department with the help of a specialist to develop the strategy, but the execution is the team responsibility. The strategy should have a meaning purpose to the work lives of the staff and must involve them.

### **3.8 SUMMARY**

MPAI 12/00 is classified as the only effective crime prevention guideline or instruction and procedures by the MPD and a coordination document to regulate the implementation or execution of crime prevention with the Department of Defence.

In this Chapter, the researcher has looked at various aspects of information to what constitutes MP 12/00 as the guideline or instruction for the MPD crime prevention sections structures, as the military environment is faced with the dilemma of crime

problems and the high growing level of crime. The MP 12/00 has a number of preventative measures such as patrol, observation and searches to guide MP crime prevention sections when executing their crime prevention duties within their proclaimed areas.

The researcher linked the MPAI to the Constitution to find out where the Constitutional mandate of the MP is derived from with regard to crime prevention. Source documents such as the White Paper (1998), NCPS (1996) and the Defence Act (2002) were referred to by the researcher to look at the broader spectrum of this MPAI 12/00 crime prevention guideline or instruction and procedures for its legal framework and relevancy to crime prevention.

The next chapter covers the crime prevention by the MPs.

## **CHAPTER 4**

### **CRIME PREVENTION BY THE MILITARY POLICE**

#### **4.1 INTRODUCTION**

Before 1994 Military Police crime prevention sections in structures (MP stations) were instrumental in activities of desertion, white community conscription who did not report for their call-ups and discipline. The shift from disciplinary issues to crime issues, made it imperative for the Military Police Agency (MPA), now known as MPD, to come up with extreme measures to meet the need for their MP crime prevention section in structures. This shift from disciplinary crime prevention to the prevention of real crime meant that crime prevention section in structures now had to address criminality phenomenon in a very practical way within their military proclaimed areas.

The whole shift implied new administrative tasks for the MPD, crime prevention alignment to complement the philosophy of the government; integrating all government departments to generate a shared vision of fighting crime (South Africa, 1996:5). Unfortunately, neither the Constitution (1996) nor South Africa (1996) mentions anything about the Military Police or explore further the specific role of the components of the South African Defence Force within the Department of DoD. The Constitution (1996) only mentioned the SANDF and left it up to South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) to stipulate the functions of the Military Police.

The MPs form part of the different police agencies that are in South Africa but within the SANDF. Therefore, it is imperative to determine what role does the MPs partake in crime prevention phenomenon or crime combating which means anticipation, recognition and appraisal of a crime risk within the DoD as defined by (Sir Robert Peel, 1972 cited in Harris, 2006:8).

#### **4.2 THE LEGISLATIVE MANDATORY FRAMEWORK OF THE MILITARY POLICE**

The Military Police derives its powers and functions from South Africa (2002) which enable MPO's to perform their duties. According to South Africa (2002:sec. 30(1)), the Chief SANDF is responsible for appointing any person selected by him to

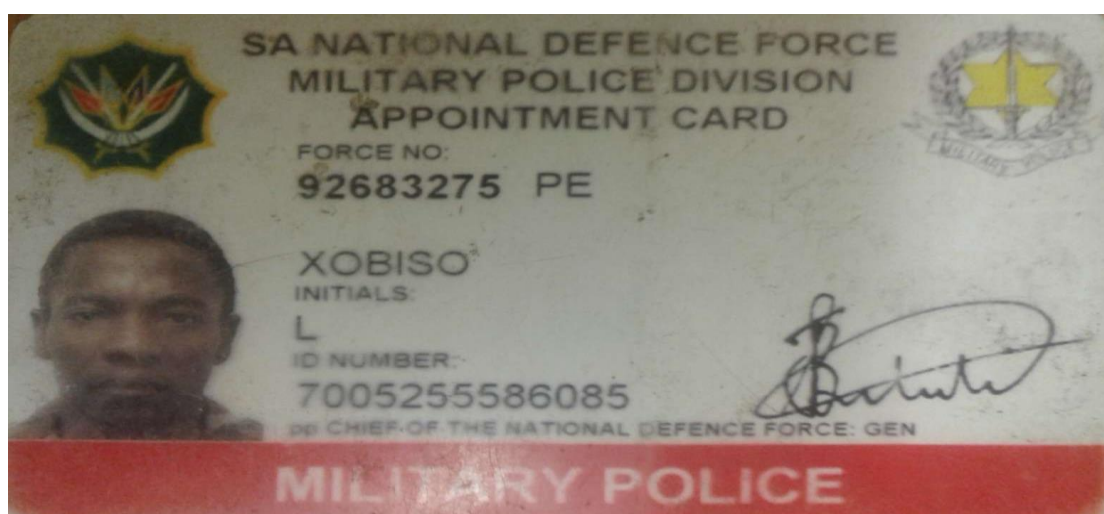
appoint Military Police from the members of SANDF and those members are then issued with the prescribed identification card which identifies them as Military Police Officials while on duty.

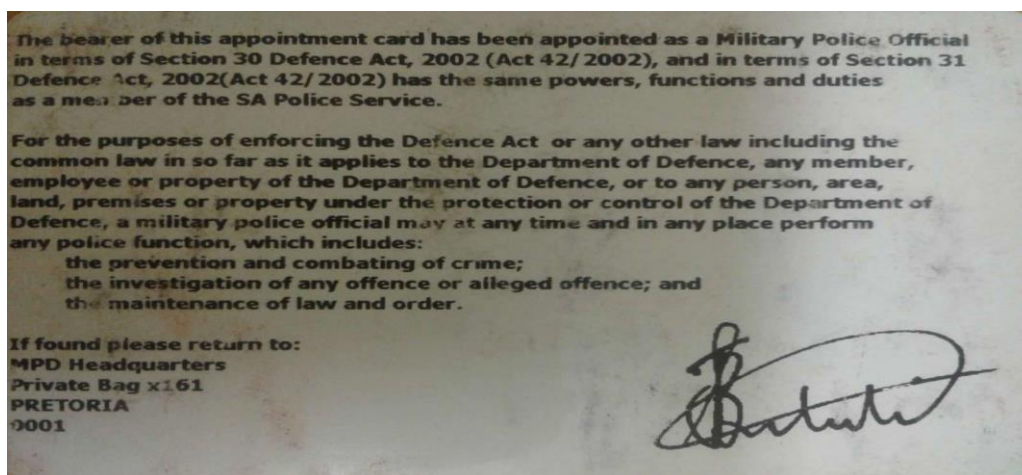
According to South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)), the functions of Military Police are to:

- Prevent and combat crime;
- Investigate any offence or alleged offence; and
- Maintain law and order.

In support of these functions, the SANDF MPD maintains a twenty-four hours military policing within their proclaimed military areas; functional duties include crime prevention patrols, client services centre operation and criminal investigation service (United State, 2004:27).

While executing these powers and functions as mentioned in South Africa (2002:sec. 30(1)), the Military Police Officials will be regarded as a peace officer as defined in terms of South Africa (1977:sec. 1) read with (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(7)). This means MPO's when performing any police function will have the same power as that imposed to the SAPS to enforce any Act of the Parliament within their proclaimed military grounds (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(2)). The MP appointment card is illustrated below in Figure 4.1.





**Figure 4.1: MP appointment card - front and back of card**

(Source: MPD Appointment Card, MPA 2014: A1)

#### **4.2.1 Limitation of the powers and functions of the Military Police**

What should be noted with regard to the powers and functions of the MPs is the limitation of their jurisdiction; MPs has no authority over the civilians. South Africa (2002:sec. 31(6)(a)) stipulates that any civilian arrested by an MPO must be handed over to the SAPS without delay. To the researcher's mind this amount to the citizen arrest advocated by (South Africa, 1977:sec. 42(1)(a)).

South Africa (2002:sec. 42(1)(a)) stipulates that any private person may without warrant arrest any person who attempts, commit or whom he/she reasonably suspects of having committed an offence referred to in schedule 1 in his/her presence. Therefore, the researcher is of the view that by virtue of this law MPs can arrest any civilian on the capacity of being a private person, not MPO.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What are the functions of the Military Police, according to the Defence Act?" Certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1: Frequency table for the functions of the MP, according to the Defence Act**

What are the functions of the Military Police, according to the Defence Act?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Maintenance of law and order, prevent and combat crime as well as investigation of crime.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 4.1, all the participants were asked, “What are the functions of the Military Police, according to the Defence Act?” to establish whether the participants understand the functions of the MP, according to the Defence Act. Responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and relevant to the literature consulted. The functions of the MPO includes prevent and combat crime, Investigate any offence or alleged offence, and maintain law and order (United State, 2004:27). The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Maintenance of law and order, prevent and combat crime as well as investigation (20 out of 20 = 100%).

Twenty participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded to the question, “What are the functions of the MP, according to the Defence Act?” Without contradictions these participants responded by saying, “Maintenance of law and order, prevent and combat crime as well as investigation,” this response provided by these participants correspond with the literature consulted and supported by South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) stipulating the functions of Military Police.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Does the Military Police have authority over civilians staying in your proclaimed area?” Certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended

question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.2.

**Table 4.2: Frequency table MPs jurisdiction over civilians**

Does the Military Police have authority over civilians staying in your proclaimed area?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	#	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
No, according to that mandate we have, we cannot arrest civilian people, but we can apply Criminal Procedure Act citizen arrest then hand them within 24 hours or as soon as possible but within 24 hours to SAPS.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	19	95%
Yes.																		1			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.2, all the participants were asked, “Does the Military Police have authority over civilians staying in your proclaimed area?” Answers provided by the participants were with no disagreement and consistent with the literature reviewed, MPs has no authority over the civilians (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(6)(a)). The participants’ responses are as follows:

- No, according to that mandate we have, we cannot arrest civilian people, but we can apply Criminal Procedure Act citizen arrest then hand them within 24 hours or as soon as possible but within 24 hours to SAPS (19 out of 20 = 95%); and
- Yes (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Nineteen participants (19 out of 20 = 95%) showed great comprehension regarding the explanation of the MPs jurisdiction over the civilian, this response provided by these participants correspond with the literature consulted and supported by South Africa (2002:sec. 31(6)(a)) advocating the limitation of authority over the civilians.



One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the same question, by saying “yes.” This response is not necessarily incorrect; this participant failed to substantiate the response provided.

#### **4.3 THE ROLE OF THE MILITARY POLICE IN CRIME PREVENTION**

Before 1994, there was no concept of crime prevention in the MP Division then known as South African Corps of Military Police, MPs used to deal with disciplinary issues. The history of the MP crime prevention appears to have been initiated after 1994 as MPAI 12/00 was written in May 2001. The researcher believes that the crime prevention became the first priority of the MPD as crime began to be an integral part of every department or community; MPs play various roles in the SANDF ranging from traffic, operational duties and crime.

The role of the MPD crime prevention section within the Defence as their jurisdiction is prevention and combating of crime at any time at any place. They have an obligation to enforce the Defence Act as well as the common law within the SANDF, to any member, any person, employee and property which is under the protection or control of the department (South Africa, 2002. sec31(1)).

Burger (2006:12) elucidates combating of crime as two broader dimensions, crime prevention with long-term activities such as social crime prevention and crime prevention through environmental design, policing with short-term activities such as proactive policing, visible policing, law enforcement and order maintenance. MP Agency (2007:2) MPs has to conduct the wide range of crime prevention programs within the SANDF with a view to reducing crime, by means of co-ordinated effort to ensure a common awareness of tackling crime at every base/unit and the within the defence community at large.

The researcher believes that the role of the MPs is not clear in some case as they cannot exercise the discretionary powers as peace officers', their powers are questionable in the view of execution, South Africa (1957:sec. 52(3)) stipulates that an officer is not liable to arrest under section (2) by a person other than an officer. The argument, in this case, is what will the crime prevention section member of the MPD, who is a non-commissioner do to prevent an officer who is committing illegal

behaviour or an offence, as the focus of the MPs is to prevent unethical conduct within the defence.

The fact that South Africa (1957:sec. 52(3)) has an influence of some kind in policing, this needs further attention. Albiston (2010:1097) state that the better interest of a fair system is to establish procedures that do not misrepresent the interest of the law and law should not require special treatment of some group. Military discipline should not be misquoted; it means enforcing correct and appropriate behaviour to all personnel regardless of the ranks, MPs should enforce an ethical violation of the codes and regulation (Canadian Military National Defence, 2013:8).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “In your opinion, what is your role as a member of the Military Police in crime prevention in your proclaimed area?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ response from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.3.

**Table 4.3: Frequency table MPs role in crime prevention within military proclaimed areas**

In your opinion, what is your role as a member of the Military Police in crime prevention in your proclaimed area?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer D.3																						
Law enforcement whereby Military Police must ensure safer military environment, this must be achieved through crime prevention patrols.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 4.3, all the participants were asked, “In your opinion, what is your role as a member of the Military Police in crime prevention in your proclaimed area?” to establish whether the participants understand their role in crime prevention within their military proclaimed areas. Answers provided by the participants were with no disagreement and were relevant with the literature consulted, as mandated by South Africa, 2002. sec31(1)) the role of the MPs in crime prevention is prevention and combating of crime. The responses of the participants are as follows:

- My role in crime prevention is to prevent crime (20 out of 20 = 100%).

The majority of participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded to the question, “What your role as a member of the Military Police in crime prevention in your proclaimed area is,” by saying “MPs role in crime prevention is to prevent crime.” This response is without contradictions, and consistent with the literature consulted and supported by MP Agency (2001:3) stating that the Section Head should provide the crime prevention section with the latest information, to enable them to direct crime prevention effort within the area of responsibility.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “In your opinion, do you think the role of the Military Police in crime prevention should be revised?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C, and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.4.

**Table 4.4: Frequency table of the considerations to revise MPs role in crime prevention**

In your opinion, do you think the role of the Military Police in crime prevention should be revised?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It supposed to be revised according to the situation everyday things change, and the modus operandi used by the criminals almost changes every day.	1		1		1	1	1	1			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		15	75%
Based on crime prevention neh ... I do ... I think more emphasis on our military police crime prevention should be put on intelligence-related that is my view.		1		1					1	1										1	5	25%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.4, all the participants were asked, “Do you think the role of the Military Police in crime prevention should be revised?” to establish whether the participants are comfortable with the current role of the MPs in crime prevention within military proclaimed areas. Responses given by the participants were in disagreement. Answers provided by the majority participants were relevant with the literature reviewed. According to Crawford (2013:8), a strategy (in this case MPAI 12/00) is all about identifying and documenting how best to run the crime prevention, therefore MPA 12/00 should fit the purpose of crime prevention, if not new way should be identified for change. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- It supposed to be revised according to the situation every day things change, and the modus operandi used by the criminals almost changes every day (15 out 20 = 75%).
- Based on crime prevention, “I think more emphasis of our military police crime prevention should be put on intelligence-related that is my view” (5 out of 20 = 25%).

The majority of fifteen participants (15 out of 20 = 75%) showed common comprehension to the question, "Do you think the role of the Military Police in crime prevention should be revised." They answered by saying, "The role of the MPs supposed to be revised according to the situation, everyday things change, and the modus operands used by the criminals almost changes every day."

This view corresponds with the literature consulted supported by Canadian Military Police (2013:6) stating that the role of the MPs should be reviewed, as MPs contribute to capacity-building the national fight crime, MPs services address a demonstrable and on-going need, for example, MPs are becoming de facto as they can take their case dockets to the civilian courts of criminal jurisdictions for resolution, not to military court only, a review of internal documentation is vital.

Five participants (5 out of 20 = 25%) are not in disagreement with the view of the role of MPs being revised; these participants are of the view that MP crime prevention should be intelligence based, this view is not necessarily wrong but is not supported by any literature reviewed.

#### **4.3.1 The importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed areas**

The researcher is of the view that crime prevention does not necessarily require one to be a specialist. It requires one to be knowledgeable about various types of crime prevention and its models thereof general crime prevention, moreover continuous training is necessary for ensuring that members are always abreast with regard to crime trends and how to counter them. The importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed areas is to identify the existence of the desire to commit a crime at an early stage and eliminate opportunity risk existence to commit a crime (MP Agency, 2001:2).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What is the importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military environment?" Certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-

ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.5.

**Table 4.5: Frequency table for the importance of MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed area**

What is the importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within the military environment?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.5	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Perform crime prevention duties.	1		1			1		1	1		1		1	1		1	1		1		11	55%
To ensure that the military environment is crime free.				1		1			1		1			1					1	1	7	35%
Is the enforcement of military discipline.		1															1				2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.5, all the participants were asked, “What is the importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military environment?” to establish whether the participants understand the importance of MP crime prevention section within the military environment. Responses provided by the participants were with no contradiction and relevant with the literature consulted. According to Canadian Military Police (2013:iii) the importance of the MP crime prevention section is to enforce and maintain the rule of law among military members within the military areas. The responses of the participants are as follows:

- Perform crime prevention duties (11 out of 20 = 55%);
- To ensure that the military environment is crime free (7 out of 20 = 35%); and
- Is the enforcement of military discipline (2 out of 20 = 10%).

Eleven participants (11 out of 20 = 55%) responded to the question by saying, “The importance of crime prevention is to perform prevention duties,” whereas seven participants (7 out of 20 = 35%) responded by saying, “To ensure that the military environment is crime free.” Both responses intertwine and consistent with the

literature consulted. According to the International Centre for the Prevention of Crime (2007:10), police crime prevention in an area should aim to deter offending, through visible presence, high visibility police programs to reassure the community that the police are available to reduce the opportunity for crime to occur.

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question by saying, “The importance of the MP crime prevention section within military proclaimed environment is the enforcement of military discipline.” This answer is not necessarily incorrect, but the inference drawn from these participants by the researcher is that these members are not well informed as disciplinary are handled by Adjutants of units.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Do you think the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section contributes towards making your proclaimed area a safer environment?” Certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.6.

**Table 4.6: Frequency table for the impact MPs current approach contribution in crime prevention**

Do you think the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section contributes towards making your proclaimed area a safer environment?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.6	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
No, the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section does not contributes towards making our proclaimed area a safer environment. With the activities that are happening lately within our country, with the threat that are happening within the country, it is imperative that the our approach should be improved we are looking at situations of bomb threat. We are looking at the situation of bomb at the ATMs, things like that we need to have a proactive policing, that is well trained to identify things like that, currently most of our members are trained in disciplinary aspects.	1			1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1		1			1	1	1		12	60%
For what we have, up to so far, actual I can say we do have that capability but we do not have resources but we are trying.	1	1											1		1	1				1	7	35%
I am not sure.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)



According to the interpretations of Table 4.6, all the participants were asked, “Do you think the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section contributes towards making your proclaimed area a safer environment?” to establish whether the participants are considering the current crime prevention approach of the MPs to be contributing toward making safer military environment. The responses are as follows:

- No, the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section does not contributes towards making our proclaimed area a safer environment, with the activities that are happening lately within our country, with the threat that are happening within the country. It is imperative that our approach should be improved we are looking at situations of bomb threat, we are looking at the situation of bomb at the ATMs, things like that we need to have a proactive policing, that is well trained to identify things like that, currently most of our members are trained in disciplinary aspects (12 out of 20 = 60%);
- For what we have, up to so far, actual I can say we do have that capability, but we do not have resources, but we are trying (7 out of 20 = 35%); and
- I am not sure (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Twelve participants (12 out of 20 = 60%) responded by saying, “The MPs’ current approach in crime prevention does not contribute toward making the military environment safer.” The importance of the police crime prevention in a particular location must be to consider collaboration partnerships, effective strategies and practises in the areas of community police with the goal to reduce crime (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:10).

Seven participants (7 out of 20 = 35%) responded by affirming that the MPs current approach in crime prevention is contributing towards making the military environment safer. Although MPs have the scarcity of resources, the inference that is drawn by the researcher from these participants’ response is that scarce resources would have a vital impact on crime prevention sections moral, whereby it would be not easy to prevent or fight crime to make the environment safer.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, “Do you think the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section contributes

towards making your proclaimed area a safer environment?” by saying “I am not sure.” The researcher is of the opinion that the participant was unable to answer due to the lack of information pertaining to the approach that is used on ground practical to conduct crime prevention.

#### **4.4 EFFECTIVE STRATEGIES AS THE BUILDING CAPACITY FOR THE MPD CRIME PREVENTION SECTION.**

Effective policing requires to tackle crime, can be attained through visible policing, as the goal of visible policing is to remove the fear of crime by addressing specific crime (South Africa, 1998:19).

There are various approaches to conduct that visible policing, South Africa (1998:19) advocates four various methods that can be used to attain effectively visible policing for specific objectives as:

- Direct patrol– The special assignment is given to patrol offices for a particular purpose of addressing criminal activities within a defined area;
- Preventive patrol– Increase police patrols in the area targeted on the basis of analysis of crime pattern, with intent to deter crime;
- High density policing– To stabilise high crime, crime concentration set of crime targets with a hotspot, this means targeting areas experiencing a high level of crime with patrolling police officer; and
- Sector policing which the researcher is of the point that, MPD crime prevention section can participate in it, as MP crime prevention members are few within the structures, the researcher will dwell on this method below.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is the definition of visible policing?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.7.

**Table 4.7: Frequency table for the definition of visible policing**

What is the definition of visible policing?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
The definition of visible policing is to be at the right place, at the right time. What do I mean, as the crime prevention member you have to do your analysis, you do not just do crime prevention blindly, you need to have hotspots, you need to know what crime is it that you are trying to prevent and how that is being perpetuated, now for you to apply or implement visible policing.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 4.7, all the participants were asked: “What is the definition of visible policing?” Responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and relevant with the literature reviewed. Visible policing provide responsive and proactive policing service, police presence felt by the public prioritising crime rate not to escalate in the form of preventative patrol, direct patrol or sector policing (Nalla & Newman 2013:65). The participants’ responses are as follows:

- The definition of visible policing is to be at the right place, at the right time. What do I mean? As the crime prevention member you have to do your analysis, you do not just do crime prevention blindly, you need to have hotspots, you need to know what crime is it that you are trying to prevent and how that is being perpetuated, now for you to apply or implement visible policing (20 out of 20 = 100%).

The majority of participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded to the question, “What definition of visible policing is?” by saying, “Visible policing is the analysis of hotspots, knowing what crime is being perpetuated and implement intervention of it thereafter.” This response corresponds with the literature consulted supported by Faulkner, Burnett & Towl (2012:105) explaining that visible policing means to be more effective in crime fighting by increasing police presence on the street.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Do you think MPs must engage in visible policing?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.8.

**Table 4.8: Frequency table for the Military Police adapting visible policing**

Do you think Military Police must engage in visible policing?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Yes. I think the more we are visible the less crime will happen.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 4.8, all the participants were asked, “Do you think MPs must engage in visible policing?” to establish what is participants’ view with regard to visible policing as the strategy to be adapted by the MP crime prevention. Responses given by the participants were with no contradiction and consistent with the literature reviewed, according to Nalla & Newman (2013:65), visible policing provide responsive and proactive policing, filling the gap between community policing and operational crime combating to eliminate crime happenings. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Yes. I think the more we are visible; the less crime will happen (20 out of 20 = 100%).

All the participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded to the question, “Do you think MPs must engage in visible policing?” Participants affirmed that MPs must adapt to visible policing and believe that visible policing could impact crime. This response corresponds with the literature consulted and is supported by Nalla and Newman (2013:65) explaining that visible policing offers an effective and efficient intensified police crime prevention for better service delivery to the victims of crime.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What does visible policing entail?” Certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.9.

**Table 4.9: Frequency table for describing visible policing**

What does visible policing entail?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Visible policing entails to be in the eyes of the public but you cannot be driving up and down with the blue light. You need to know exactly what you want to achieve, identify the crime, the manner the crime is been happening. Let me say the elements surrounded the crime then you ensure in visible policing that you break those elements down, and then you prohibit the perpetrator to	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

What does visible policing entail?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
execute any of those elements of that crime.																						

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretation of Table 4.9, all the participants were asked, “What does visible policing entail?” to establish whether the participants understand the basis of visible policing. Responses provided by the participants were with no disagreement and were consistent with the literature reviewed, Burger (2007:10) stating that visible policing entails proactive policing in the form of patrols to ensure police visibility in the area to prevent, reduce, control or deter crime. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Visible policing entails to be in the eyes of the public, but you cannot be driving up and down with the blue light, you need to know exactly what you want to achieve, identify the crime, the manner in which the crime has been happening. Let me say the elements surrounded the crime then you ensure in you visible policing that you break those elements down, then you prohibit the perpetrator execute any of those elements of that crime (20 out of 20 = 100%).

All participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) showed common understanding to the question, “What does visible policing entails?” this participants believe that visible policing entails all means to break down crime elements. This response is relevant and corresponds with the literature consulted and supported by South Africa (2013:16) pointing out that effective visible policing entails vigorous law enforcement and accurate crime analysis, to ensure interventions reduce crime through various effort; direct patrol, preventive patrol, high density policing and sector policing.

#### 4.4.1 Sector policing

Sector policing can be defined as the division of the large area into smaller managerial geographical sectors and the appointment of police officers, as the sector commander to the sectors on a permanent basis. These police officers

regularly patrol the sectors and are able to identify problems together with the community and seek appropriate solutions to address the root causes of crime (South African Police Services, 2003:14).

The White Paper on Safety and Security (1998:1) was the first official policy document in South Africa with the reference of the concept “sector policing” that is:

- Proactively, firmly and fairly managed;
- Based on the sound orders from police commanders to patrol officers;
- Crime analysis is providing the foundation for planning;
- Focus on specific problems within any area;
- Implemented in the agreed time frame; and
- Develop in co-operation with local police service and other relevant role players.

In South Africa, a strategy to enhance police-community partnership known as sector policing was officially launched only in 2001, with a pilot project in the Johannesburg area; it has the elements of the crime prevention forums (Nalla & Newman, 2013:67).

According to Rowe (2008:5), it is crucial that police must establish policing network which is vital to preventing and combating crime. This network in sector policing requires the sector commander to established Sector Crime Forum (SCF), sector policing is a fundamental part of the community policing, the SCF is to ensure a mutual working relationship with the Community Policing Forums as to:

- Identify possible solutions.
- Allocate responsibilities.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is sector policing?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.10.

**Table 4.10: Frequency table for the sector policing**

What is sector policing?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
This is a division of a large area into smaller manageable areas called sector, each area is assigned with the police to try and solve crime challenges of the area.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.10, all the participants were asked, “What is sector policing?” to establish whether the participants understand what sector policing is. Answers provided by the participants were relevant with the literature researched and supported by Nalla and Newman (2013:67) stating that sector policing is an initiative to address local crime problem and increase police visibility. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- This is a division of a large area into smaller manageable areas called sector; each area is assigned with the police to try and solve crime challenges of the area (20 out of 20 = 100%).

All participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) showed excessive comprehension, of what sector policing is whereby they responded by saying, “Sector policing is a division of a large area into smaller manageable areas called sector, each area is assigned to the police.” This view corresponds with the literature consulted where Nalla and Newman (2013:66) enlightening that sector policing is characterised by intensive policing and patrol strategy, a large area around each police station is divided into smaller, manageable area called sectors.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How can the Military Police become involved in sector policing?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and



D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.11.

**Table 4.11: Frequency table for MPs involvement in sector policing**

How can the Military Police become involved in sector policing?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Through proper training and implementation.	1	1			1		1				1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	13	65%
Currently we at Thaba Tshwane we took an initiative we implemented this approach.					1		1	1	1												4	20%
First of all it hard to be involve in sector policing due lack of resources but I believe sector policing is answer to this crime rate going up now and then.			1									1									2	10%
I have never received training on sector policing so I am not in the position to tell how we can become part of it.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.11, all the participants were asked, “How can the Military Police become involved in sector policing?” to establish whether these participants have an idea of how can the MPs be involved in sector policing. According to South African Police Service (2013:56), the implementation of sector policing requires training and development, necessary experience and knowledge. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Through proper training and implementation (13 out of 20 = 65%);

- Currently we at Thaba Tshwane we took the initiative we implemented this approach (4 out of 20 = 20%);
- First of all, it's hard to be involved in sector policing due lack of resources, but I believe sector policing is the answer to this crime rate going up now and then (2 out of 20 = 10%); and
- I have never received training on sector policing, so I am not in the position to tell how we can become part of it (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Thirteen participants (13 out of 20 = 65%) showed common understanding regarding the explanation of "How the MPs can be involved in sector policing?" These participants responded by saying, "It is through educative programs of both the MPs and community, that MPs can be involved in sector policing and implementation," this view relevant with the literature consulted and supported by the view of the South African Police Services (2003:52) explaining that sector policing is the division of the large area into smaller managerial geographical sectors with the following objectives:

- Enhance service delivery
- Bring police closer to the community
- Establish partnership
- Improve community participation
- Prevent the increasing levels of crime
- Address the causes of crime
- Establish informer network
- Improve response time
- Enhance interaction between SAPS and community
- Encourage police visibility and accessibility

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded by saying, "Already we are involved in sector policing." Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the question, by pointing out that it will be hard to be involved in sector policing due to manpower shortage. This view is consistent with the literature consulted and supported by the view of Buthelezi (2010) cited in South Africa Police Services (2013:22) concurring that lack of manpower or vehicle can obstruct effective implementation of sector

policing. One Participant (1 out of 20 = 5) was unable to respond to the question due to the fact that this participant has never received training on sector policing, so this participant was not in the position to tell how MPs can become part of sector policing.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police’s crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.12.

**Table 4.12: Frequency table for the crime prevention strategy that can suit the MPs in the military proclaimed area**

In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police’s crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	#	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer D.12																						
Visible Policing.											1	1		1	1	1			1	1	7	35%
Sector policing.					1	1	1		1				1				1				6	30%
I cannot say there is a specific model that can work for our crime prevention because when you are talking about our crime prevention, I believe you are referring to the Thaba Tshwane MP Station, what works in Thaba Tshwane will not works in Waterkloof in Wonderboom, or Dequar.	1	1	1																		3	10%

In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police's crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	#	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
I do not know, first manpower, as you can see we got three members on the ground to do crime prevention so if maybe we were more, we were supposed to deploy the members in difference places, unlikely the people who want to commit crime they know that if one person is on leave, one sick leave then one is left, they know they can do whatever and if we had enough strength, we can do patrols, roadblocks and everything can be done to prevent equipment from being stolen.	1	1	1																		3	15%
Crime prevention must be blinded by the more emphasis on the intelligence base.				1																	1	5%
Community Policing.																	1				1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.12, all the participants were asked, "In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police's crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?" The participants' responses are as follows:

- Visible Policing (7 out of 20 = 35%);

- Sector policing (6 out of 20 = 30%);
- I cannot say there is a specific model that can work for our crime prevention because when you are talking about our crime prevention, I believe you are referring to the Thaba Tshwane MP Station, what works in Thaba Tshwane will not work in Waterkloof in Wonderboom, or Dequar (3 out of 20 = 15%);
- I do not know, first manpower, as you can see we got three members on the ground to do crime prevention so if maybe we were more, we were supposed to deploy the members in difference places, unlikely the people who want to commit crime they know that if one person is on leave, one sick leave then one is left, they know they can do whatever and if we had enough strength, we can do patrols, roadblocks and everything can be done to prevent equipment from being stolen (2 out of 20 = 10%);
- Like I said the current strategy that we are using should be blinded by the more emphasis on the intelligence based (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- Community Policing (1 out of 20 =5%).

Seven participants (7 out of 20 = 35%), six participants (6 out of 20 = 30%) and one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) although the responses provided by these participants on their theme frequencies are not similar, but they intertwined as these strategies are closely linked and in some instances they can be implemented together visible policing, sector policing and community policing for better service delivery to reduce crime. South Africa (1998:19) states that various methods that can be used to attain effective including visible policing and sector policing for an objective of reducing crime.

What caught the researchers' mind is the responses of two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) who responded to the question, "In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police's crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?" by saying, "There is no particular strategy that is definitely because what works for Thaba Tshwane would not work on another place;" this view is supported by Vaessen & Leeuw (2017:78) stating that whatever crime prevention strategy that works effectively at one place will not necessarily guarantee to do so on another place.

Three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) were unable to answer the question, “In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police’s crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed area?” The researcher is of the opinion that these participants were unable to answer because there are not well informed about the crime prevention strategies that might be used as an intervention on crime due to training received, other participants last attended crime prevention course during 1994. One other participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the same question by saying, “Like I said the current strategy that we are using should be blinded by the more emphasis on the intelligence based,” this answer is not necessarily incorrect but cannot be linked to any source consulted.

#### **4.4.2 The importance of community and stakeholder’s engagement in crime prevention within the military proclaimed environment**

There is a growing belief that the police alone cannot win the battle against crime and disorder nor to great public demand for a visible policing presence (Goold & Zedner, 2006:61). Chade (1997:xiii) explains that this is due to continues crime increase in all its spheres. Community plays a central role in driving the crime prevention initiative even they may not be the initiators (United Nations Human Settlement Programme, 2007:98). The community involvement is seen as the key in dealing with crime, as individuals criminality is related to the community where they either work or live, therefore the involvement of the community can impact crime factor (Zhong, 2013:53). Zhong (2013:41) believe that the actions of community crime prevention should be to change crime condition within communities.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within your proclaimed military environment?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.13.

**Table 4.13: Frequency table for the importance of engaging the community and stakeholders in crime prevention within the proclaimed military environment**

What is the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within your proclaimed military environment?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.13	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
The importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention is to share crime responsibility and crime problems within your proclaimed military environment.	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1				16	80%
The community becomes part of crime prevent then this means more eyes and ears that will feed the police with information.			1														1	1	1		4	20%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.13, all the participants were asked, “What is the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within your proclaimed military environment?” to establish whether the participants understand the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within their proclaimed military environment. Answers provided by the participants correspond and relevant to the literature reviewed, ICPC (2008:186) stating that community and stakeholders involvement is crucial in that it;

- Helps to decide on policing priorities;

- Offer advises on policing problems;
- Enhance human rights; and
- Enhance the effectiveness of service delivery.

The participants' responses are as follows:

- The importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention is to share crime responsibility and crime problems within our proclaimed military environment (16 out of 20 = 80%).
- The community becomes part of crime prevent then this means more eyes and ears that will feed the police with information (4 out of 20 = 20%).

There are dissimilarities from the sixteen participants' responses (16 out of 20 = 80%) to the question, "What is the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within your proclaimed military environment?" They responded by saying, "The importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention is to share crime responsibility and crime problems within your proclaimed military environment."

In their response to the above question, four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) provided this answer, "The community becomes part of crime prevent then this means more eyes and ears that will feed the police with information." Both responses provided by both groups (16 is to 80%) and (4 is to 20%) intertwined and relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by Kingston (2014:17) explaining that that community is at the heart of crime prevention and must be stakeholders in crime prevention and public safety.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What does community involvement mean to you?" certain themes emerged from the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.14.



**Table 4.14: Frequency table for community involvement in crime prevention**

What does community involvement mean to you?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.14	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It is not all the crimes that can be solved by police; there are crimes that I call behind the scene happening within the families we need the community to inform us about those crimes.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	20	100

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.14, all the participants were asked, “What does community involvement mean to you?” To establish whether the participants understand the value of the involvement of the community in crime prevention within their proclaimed military environment. Responses provided by the participants were relevant to the literature reviewed. According to ICPC (2008:180), the advantage of community engagement is that it reduces incidents of crime. The response is as follows:

- It is not all the crimes that can be solved by police; there are crimes that I call behind the scene happening within the families we need the community to inform us about those crimes (20 out of 20 = 100%).

Although there were dissimilarities from the twenty participants’ (20 out of 20 = 100%) responses but their answers were with no disagreement. They responded to the question, “What does community involvement mean to you?” by saying, “It is not all crime that can be prevented by police, police need the involvement of the community as other crimes happens behind the doors.” This response is relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by Spalek (2013:10) enlightening that the danger of not engaging the community will harm the channels of information, police

may always get second-hand information lacking the specificity of what is happening within the communities.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How do you interact with the community in your proclaimed area regarding crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.15.

**Table 4.15: Frequency table for interaction with the community**

How do you interact with the community in your proclaimed area regarding crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer D.15																						
Our community remember are the soldiers because we are serving in the SANDF. We got meetings, presentations normally presented by the Area Provost Marshal to the stakeholder, explaining what is the role of the MP, what is our main job and what must they do if they see something, the community knows what must be done maybe they see that this person is doing something or is attempting to	1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1		15	75%

How do you interact with the community in your proclaimed area regarding crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.15	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
steal they know that they must pick up the phone and report what is been done and because of the normal duty of crime prevention we are disturbing the criminals not to commit crime.																						
We interact with the community by means of distribution of the pamphlet, making them aware about the crime in the surrounding area as well as where they stay, that is interaction of the military police.		1		1												1				1	4	20%
Maybe they do interact, but I do not remember.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.15, all the participants were asked, “How do you interact with the community in your proclaimed area regarding crime prevention?” to establish in which way do the participants’ interaction with the community within their proclaimed military environment. The responses are as follows:

- Our community remember the soldiers because we are serving in the SANDF, we got meetings, presentations normally presented by the Area Provost Marshal

to the stakeholder, explaining what the role of the MP is, our main job and what must they do if they see something, the community knows what must be done maybe they see that this person is doing something or is attempting to steal they know that they must pick up the phone and report what is done and because of the normal duty of crime prevention we are disturbing the criminals not to commit crime (15 out of 20 = 75%);

- We interact with the community by means of distribution of the pamphlet, making them aware about the crime in the surrounding area as well as where they stay, that is the interaction of the military police (4 out of 20 = 20%); and
- Maybe they do interact, but I do not remember (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Fifteen participants on high frequency (15 out of 20 = 75%) they answered to the question by saying, "We got meetings, presentations normally presented by the Area Provost Marshal to the stakeholder, explaining what the role of the MP is, our main job and what must they do if they see something," and four participants on average frequency (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded by saying "We interact with the community by means of distribution of the pamphlet, making them aware about the crime in the surrounding area."

The responses of both frequencies intertwined although there were dissimilarity, their answers were with no disagreement and relevant to the literature consulted and is supported by Teasdale and Bradley (2017:62) stating that the aim of community crime prevention is to improve campaigns initiatives, develop and implement programs that will help primary gear toward combating crime. Furthermore, this crime prevention programs must be directed to empower and improve the living condition of the community.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, this participant responded by saying, "Maybe they do interact, but I do not remember." The researcher is of the view that this participant does not have the insight of the happening of own working environment.

#### **4.5 EFFORT TO STRENGTHEN THE MILITARY POLICE CRIME PREVENTION FOR SUSTAINABILITY**

The researcher is of the point of view that the MPD is assigned with a very crucial role in the SANDF, powers to prevent and combat crime issues against defence community and within the Defence at large (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(1)). Therefore, the MPD ought to come up with more concrete measures to be able to offer better crime prevention services within their jurisdictions. As it has been noted that there is an emerging form of criminality rising within the SANDF, the SANDF members are involved in the theft of weapons, computers, funds, ration, state equipment's ranging from office equipment to vehicle (Military Police Agency, 2007:2).

The vision of the National Development Plan (NDP) is that by 2030 South Africa must be a country whereby all people live without fear of crime wherever there are (South Africa, 2012:350). For the future of the MPD in support of the vision of National Development Plan and for sustainability of MP crime prevention within military proclaimed environment, MPD crime prevention sections need to be more integrated into the community with the focus of tackling the fundamental causes of crime (South Africa, 2012:350).

South Africa (2012:356) point out that for sustainability of safety co-ordinated effort is required from all the stakeholders, furthermore, to strengthen crime prevention, MP crime prevention sections need to build a collaborative community involvement (South Africa, 2012:350). Solid information of crime trends and statistical data on crime should be gathered, to assist in the construction of the picture of what is happening within the area, to come up with the effective, successful crime prevention plan of action (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:25).

Knowing what is happening can enable the police to identify more suitable model or approach that can support their crime prevention role to contribute to a comprehensive solving crime problem (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:13).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What do you think the Military Police must do to attain sustainability in

crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.16.

**Table 4.16: Frequency table for sustainability of the MPs crime prevention**

What do you think the Military Police must do to attain sustainability in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer D.16																						
More manpower, equipment, competent members, flexible crime prevention strategies to be defined that suit areas of responsibility.		1			1		1	1	1		1	1		1	1		1		1	1	12	60%
What we must do is to equip the members on crime prevention, at least undergo training in line with the current situation as for reaction if ever the criminals use one of this method we can respond.	1			1		1												1			4	20%
Reorganise the whole setup of crime prevention not only on the lower, even at the higher HQ we need people who will come to us, motivate us to do the job.			1										1			1					3	15%
The demarcation of power from the minister of defence/ the chief then the MP can be able to do their work professionally and diligently.									1												1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.16, all the participants were asked, “What do you think the Military Police must do to attain sustainability in crime prevention?” to establish whether the participants had an idea of what MPs must do to sustain its crime prevention for the coming future. Responses provided by the participants correspond with the literature consulted, According to Marzbali, Abdullah, Razak, and Tilaki (2011:167), sustainability undertaken by one department may not confirm the same result as for another one to solve existing crime problems, it is vital to think of the alternative as there are no rules for sustainability and sustainability must develop programs that will;

- Built the environment
- Bring social welfare
- Meet the needs of the community
- Enhance social cohesion

The responses of the participants are as follows:

- More manpower, equipment, competent members, flexible crime prevention strategies to be defined that suit areas of responsibility (12 out of 20 = 60%);
- What we must do is to equip the members on crime prevention, at least undergo training in line with the current situation as for reaction if ever the criminals use one of this method we can respond (4 out of 20 = 20%);
- Reorganise the whole setup of crime prevention not only on the lower, even at the higher HQ we need people who will come to us, motivate us to do the job (3 out of 20 = 15%); and
- The demarcation of power from the minister of defence/the chief then the MP can be able to do their work professionally and diligently (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Twelve participants (12 out of 20 = 60%) responded to the question, “What do you think the Military Police must do to attain sustainability in crime prevention?” by saying that the MPs needs “More manpower, equipment, competent members, flexible crime prevention strategies to be defined that suit areas of responsibility.” This response corresponds with the literature consulted and supported by National Police Directorate of Norway (2008:94) emphasising that the department must avail police resources and ensure the use of resources in a beneficial way.

Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded to the same question by suggesting that, “The training must be in line with the current situation as for reaction to match the criminals.” This response is relevant and supported by National Police Directorate of Norway (2008:19) pointing out that continuous recruitment and training of officers (MP) should be done to stabilise the capacity level to meet service delivery.

The responses provided by three participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) to the above question suggest that “MPD need to recognise crime prevention in the entire MPD.” International Centre for the Prevention of Crime (2008:163) states that a more logical and vigorous evaluation must be used, to assess situations if not done that department is running a risk of going to reform.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the above question by suggesting that, “The demarcation of power from the minister of defence/the chief then the MP can be able to do their work professionally and diligently.” This response is not necessarily incorrect and is not supported by any of the literature consulted. The researcher is of the view that this participant is not familiar with the channels of command.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What do you suggest can be done to strengthen the efforts of the Military Police crime prevention section in you proclaimed areas?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.17.



**Table 4.17: Frequency table to strengthen the efforts of the MPs crime prevention**

What do you suggest can be done to strengthen the efforts of the Military Police crime prevention section in you proclaimed area?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.17	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Resource, manpower and skill our members.		1		1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	16	80%
Regular mobile patrol, regular foot patrols the police must always be visible, police visibility.	1		1		1		1														4	20%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.17, all the participants were asked, “What do you suggest can be done to strengthen the efforts of the Military Police crime prevention section in you proclaimed areas?” to establish whether the participants had an idea of what could be done to strengthen the MPs crime prevention effort within military proclaimed areas. Responses provided by the participants correspond and are relevant with the literature consulted, Marzbali et al. (2011:160), stating that in order to strengthen crime prevention efforts, it is vital to consider the surrounding environment and the mitigating crime factors in that place. The responses of the participants are as follows:

- Resource, manpower and skill our members (16 out of 20 = 80%).
- Regular mobile patrol, regular foot patrol, the police must always be visible, police visibility (4 out of 20 = 20%).

In their response to the above question, sixteen participants (16 out of 20 = 80%) provided this answer, “Resource, manpower and skill our members.” Four participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) responded to the same question by providing this response, “Regular mobile patrol, regular foot patrol the police must always be visible, police visibility,” both participants groups (16 is to 80%) and (4 is to 20%) responses interlinked and relevant with the literature consulted, supported by Tilley

& Sidebottom (2017:544) stating that skills and resources are factors of day to day functioning and can influence success on the delivery of crime prevention initiatives.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “What is the status of your crime prevention equipment?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.18.

**Table 4.18: Frequency table for the status of MPs crime prevention equipment**

What is the status of your crime prevention equipment?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.18	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Poor, more input is needed on equipment for improvement.		1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	18	90%
I can say it is good.	1							1													2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.18, all the participants were asked, “What is the status of your crime prevention equipment?” to establish whether the participants had an idea of their current status of MPs crime prevention equipment. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Poor, more input is needed on equipment for improvement (18 out of 20 = 90%).
- I can say it is good (2 out of 20 = 10%).

The majority of eighteen participants (18 out of 20 = 90%) responded to the question, “What is the status of your crime prevention equipment,” by saying, “Poor, more input is needed on equipment for improvement.” National Police Directorate of Norway (2008:106) states that for sustainability and to strengthen effective crime

prevention the strength of the crime prevention sections should be sufficient, the limited resources can have a bad impact on police and can influence the community to perceive whatever the police is doing wrong.

Whereas two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the same above question by saying, “The status of equipment is good.” according to Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) (2002:4), suitable resources are the requirement to achieve sustainability in crime prevention.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “Name the crime prevention strategies do you use as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed areas,” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one response for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.19.

**Table 4.19: Frequency table for crime prevention strategies used by MPs as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed area**

Name the crime prevention strategies do you use as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed area.	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.19	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Visible policing by means of patrols and roadblocks.	1			1	1				1			1	1	1	1	1			1	1	18	90%
Sector policing, we must encourage the interaction between the Military Police and soldier’s community.																	1				1	5%
Community Policing.																		1			1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.19, all the participants were requested to, “Name the crime prevention strategies do you use as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed areas,” to establish whether the participants do use crime prevention strategies to fight crime in your proclaimed areas. The responses of the participants are as follows:

- Visible policing by means of patrols and roadblocks (18 out of 20 = 90%);
- Sector policing (1 out of 20 = 5%); and
- Community policing (1 out of 20 = 5%).

There were no dissimilarities from the eighteen participants’ responses (18 out of 20 = 90%) to the request, “Name the crime prevention strategies do you use as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed areas,” and they responded by saying, that strategy that is used as the intervention by the MPs is, “Visible policing by means of patrols and roadblocks.”

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded by saying, “Sector policing is used as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed areas,” and another one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) responded to the same question by saying, “Community policing.” The inference drawn by the researcher is that MPs do use effective crime prevention strategies as an intervention.

#### **4.6 MPO’s PARTICIPATION IN SITUATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION**

Clark (1992) as cited in Welsh & Farrington (2012:22) explain that situational crime prevention (SCP) entails a range of different measures geared to reduce the opportunity to reduce crime from occurring. There are a number of situational crime preventions that highlight the importance of pursuing every specific form of crime, in certain situations under the four situational crime prevention headings:

- Increasing the difficulty of crime- Making the targets harder to get at;
- Increasing perceived risk- Of been detected or a caught;
- Reducing anticipated rewards- Property marking and target removal; and
- Removing excuses to commit crime- Just own action.

SCP does not deal with the offender rather than it tailored to reduce certain opportunities that motive the offender to commit a crime by reducing the rewards. Why specific opportunities because ATM robberies will differ from bank robberies (Sutton et al., 2014:55).

Okeke and Shah (2016:116) state that the four situational crime prevention headings are based on the proposed Clarke's 25 techniques of situational crime prevention, MPs can be to any of the following techniques:

- Target hardening– Seek to increase chances of being captured by making conditions to commit crime more difficult, an example steering column lock in the vehicle (O'Malley & Sutton, 1997:259);
- Target removal– Making sure that object that can attract criminals are not visible, an example cell phone out of sight, in a pocket or drawer (Atlas, 2008:73);
- Identify property– Property tagging is to make hard for offenders to dispose of marked items (Lab, 2014:67; and
- Access Control– Restricting access to sites somehow controls who may enter a certain area, for instance making sure that doors are locked before living, and only people with keys can enter (Schneider, 2010:47).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What is situational crime prevention?" certain themes emerged from - the participants' responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.20.

**Table 4.20: Frequency table for the situational crime prevention**

What is situational crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It deals with the removal of provocations that will reward the			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	18	90%

What is situational crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.20	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
offender to commit a crime, and it increase the cost of being caught.																						
I do not know.	1	1																			2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.20, all the participants were asked, “What situational crime prevention is?” to establish whether the participants understand what situational crime prevention is. Answers provided by the participants correspond and consistent with the literature reviewed. Clarke (1995:91) as cited in Teasdale and Bradley (2017:261) clarifies that SCP is an approach that focuses on reducing specific opportunities for crime. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- It deals with the removal of provocations that will reward the offender to commit crime, and it increase the cost of being caught (18 out of 20 = 90%).
- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Eighteen participants (18 out of 20 = 90%) showed common understanding regarding the explanation of situational crime prevention whereby they responded by saying, situational crime prevention deals with the removal of provocations that will reward the offender to commit crime, and it increases the chances of being caught. This view is correct and relevant to the literature consulted. Welsh and Farrington (2011:11) define the situational crime prevention as an approach to crime prevention that focuses on decreasing opportunities for crime by modifying the immediate conditions surrounding causes of the criminal acts, in order to affect offenders perceptions of increased risks directly, removes excuses for committing crime and reduce provocation to commit crime as well as the rewards.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, “What situational crime prevention is?” The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer because some of these participants last attended crime

prevention course during 1994, this means that some are not capacitated comprehensively with crime prevention vocabulary.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.21.

**Table 4.21: Frequency table for the involvement of the MPs in situational crime prevention**

How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Answer D.21																						
Train our members in numbers; engage the community through road shows. Then educate the community on specific crimes of situational crime prevention and how to prevent those crimes	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	19	95%
I do not know.			1																		1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.21, all the participants were asked, “How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention?” to establish whether the participants had an idea of how MPs can participate in situational crime prevention. The participants’ responses are as follows:

- Train our members in numbers; engage the community through road show. Then educate the community on specific crimes of situational crime prevention, how to prevent those crimes (19 out of 20 = 95%).

- I do not know (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Nineteen participants (19 out of 20 = 95%) responded to the question, “How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention?” by saying, “Train our members in numbers; engage the community through road show, then educate the community on specific crimes of situational crime prevention, how to prevent those crimes.” Arrington (2007:36) states that the role of the MPs with regard to public educative programs in situational crime prevention will be to educate the community within the military proclaim areas on preventive crime measure so that they can apply to protect themselves and their property.

One participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question, “How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention.” The researcher is of the opinion that this participant was unable to answer due to lack of on the job training, which could assist this participant to be knowledgeable of issues regarding crime prevention as some of them last attended crime prevention courses in 1994 when doing basic training.

#### **4.7 KNOWLEDGE FOR FURTHER PROGRESS**

MPD adopted the SAPS oriented training as from 2007 based on SAQA Unit Standard, prior to that the curriculum was used. National Police Directorate of Norway (2008:90) states that for the successful interventions within the police environment shared learning have a significant role to enhance the objective. South African Police Service (2010:17) explains that training has a vital midpoint to play, in developing pools of skilled personnel within the department, as to withstand future demand.

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, “How does the South African Police Services-oriented training that you received at the Military Police School influence your daily functioning in crime prevention?” certain themes emerged from the participants’ responses from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question, the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.22.



**Table 4.22: Frequency table for the SAPS influential training on the daily routine of MPs**

How does the South African Police Services-oriented training that you received at the Military Police School influence your daily functioning in crime prevention?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.22	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
Based on the time, now the national crime prevention strategic outline the needs to address the fact that the crime that happens within the department of defence or in the DoD crime is mostly perpetuated by people who come from outside and we got more civilians who are committing crime in the DoD, the South African Police Services-oriented training that I received at the Military Police School plays a major role	1	1		1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	18	90%
The basic one was not SAPS at that time of our training.			1			1															2	10%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.22, all the participants were asked, “How does the South African Police Services-oriented training that you received at the Military Police School influence your daily functioning in crime prevention?” to establish whether the participants appreciate the crime prevention SAPS-oriented training that they received at the MP School as meaningful on their daily tasks. The responses of the participants are as follows:

- Based on the time, now the national crime prevention strategic outline the needs to address the fact that the crime that happens within the DoD or within the DoD crime is mostly perpetuated by people who come from outside and we got more civilians who are committing crime in the DoD, the South African Police Services-oriented training that I received at the Military Police School plays a major role (number of times answered 18 out of 20 = 90%).
- The basic one was not SAPS at that time of our training (2 out of 20 = 10%).

The majority of eighteen participants (18 out of 20 = 90%) responded to the above question, by affirming that the crime prevention SAPS-oriented training that they received at the Military Police School, it influences their daily functioning in crime prevention positively. To ensure the application, consistent enforcement and specialist, training is crucial for the police (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:90).

Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded by saying in the training of their time; there was no SAPS crime prevention-oriented training. After training all police should be offered to attend refresher courses, to top up their skills through in order to match the ever-changing crime environment (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:90).

Using thematic analysis for interpreting the responses of the participants to the question, "What advantages does the South African Police Service-oriented training have to the Military Police crime prevention section?" certain themes emerged from the participants' response from all the samples A, B, C and D. The participants were offered a chance to respond with more than one answer for the single question, as this was an open-ended question; the responses of the participants are presented below as per theme quoted in Table 4.23.

**Table 4.23: Frequency table for the advantages of the SAPS-oriented training to the Military Police crime prevention section**

What advantages does the South African Police Services-oriented training have to the Military Police crime prevention section?	Number of times this answer was provided in response to the question																				Participants occurs	
Answer D.23	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	Total	Theme frequency %
It gives us more knowledge.	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	17	85%
As I said, I did not receive such training.	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	10%
I am not very sure but the training from the MP school is very discouraging because we always know we just do the training that is not accreditation and so on and so forth, so I am not going to be specifically on crime prevention only, generally going to MP Sch does not really give much moral to us members of the MP Division.	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	5%

(Source: Response from the participants in samples A, B, C and D)

According to the interpretations of Table 4.23, all the participants were asked, “What advantages do the South African Police Service-oriented training have to the Military Police crime prevention section?” The participants’ responses are as follows:

- It gives us more knowledge (17 out of 20 = 85%);
- As I said, I did not receive such training (2 out of 20 = 10%); and
- I am not very sure, but the training from the MP school is very discouraging because we always know we just do the training that is not accreditation and so on and so forth, so I am not going to be specifically on crime prevention only,

generally going to MP School does not really give much moral to us members of the MP Division (1 out of 20 = 5%).

Seventeen participants (17 out of 20 = 85%) responded to the question, "What advantages do the South African Police Service-oriented training have to the Military Police crime prevention section?" by saying, "It gives us more knowledge." Two participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded to the same question by saying "I did not receive such training" and one participant (1 out 20 = 5%) response was, "Training from the MP school is very discouraging as is not accreditation."

According to National Police Directorate of Norway (2008:143), the outcome of the nature of training must be practical oriented and be incorporated into the working related experience (National Police Directorate of Norway, 2008:143).

#### **4.8 SUMMARY**

The assigned responsibility of the MPs is to prevent crime; MPs are to address the primary cause or eliminate grass root causes of crime or risk factors of crime within the SANDF proclaimed environment. By virtue of their appointment, MPs ought to build and maintain the mutual relationship between MPs and the defence community within the military proclaimed environment, through various strategies, approach and means of crime prevention for an effective and efficient role in the combating of crime.

The role of MPs in crime prevention should be to lead the initiative, together with the community, to sustain crime prevention within the military proclaimed area. The vision of the NDP 2030 "Everybody by 2030 must live without the fear of crime whether home, school or at work" this should be promoted within the SANDF as the whole, as crime prevention is everybody's business.

The next chapter covers the findings, recommendations and conclusion.

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

#### **5.1 INTRODUCTION**

This chapter presents the findings of this study and discusses them. To reach the findings, the researcher conducted a semi-structured interview with all the participants to gain their insight experiences and also used literature to explore knowledge about the world of Military Police crime prevention. To be able to present decisive findings in this study, the researcher used thematic data analysis process. The researcher used as a unit of analysis the interview transcripts, translating all the recorded interviews into transcripts, re-read the transcripts very carefully more than once as to familiarise himself with the information.

The researcher then used the coding process, selected and labelled relevant sentences, phrases, sections and words as raised by the participants. Similar codes were grouped into categories called themes. These selected themes are the core result, to address the following three relevant research questions of this study:

- What does crime prevention entail?
- What does MPAI 12/00 entail as far as crime prevention is concerned?
- How should crime be prevented by the Military Police?

The differences and similarities that emerged from interpreting the responses of the participants as illustrated in Tables' chapter 2, 3 and 4, has added value to the presentation of this research findings as discussed below.

#### **5.2 FINDINGS**

The following findings are reported which emanate from this study.

##### **5.2.1 Primary findings**

According to the Presidential Commission for the study of Bioethical Issues (2016:2), primary findings refer to the core result of the whole study from the perspective of participants to address the research question. The primary findings are outlined below.

### **5.2.1.1 Research question one: What does crime prevention entail?**

In this study, the researcher established that there is not a single, understanding of what crime prevention entails. Crime prevention is vague as it differs from programme to programme and study to study (Lab, 2014:27). Crime prevention means different things to different people (Schneider, 2010:4). According to SAPS Division Training Learning Area 5 Crime Prevention (2006:18), crime prevention includes all policing and community activities aimed at preventing or reducing predisposing and precipitating factors leading to crime. This is confirmed by the participants below.

- **Meaning of crime prevention**—The majority of participants thought that crime prevention is basically preventing crime before it happens. Minority participants were of the view that crime prevention is interventions applied to prevent crime or eliminate crime from occurring. Other opinions raised by the participants on the meaning of crime prevention suggested that crime prevention is the way to prevent crime before anything. The least participants were of the view that crime prevention is all policing and community activities aimed at preventing or reducing precipitating and predisposing factors leading to crime.

The researcher established that although the participants provided different answers, there are not in arguments, their responses intertwine. No matter how crime prevention is defined, crime prevention must be able to provide means to reduce or eliminate crime before it occurs.

- **Proactive crime prevention**— The majority of the participants were in the view that proactive crime prevention “Is to act in advance trying to reduce or eliminate crime before it can even take place.” Other participants thought proactive crime prevention “means that as the Military Police you have to be always available in the area of responsibility and ensure that you are always visible.” One participant (16 out of 20 = 80%) responded to the question that proactive crime prevention “Is anticipating and respond before crime happens.”

The researcher established that pro means before therefore this confirms that police in proactive crime prevention must anticipate and act in advance before crime can happen.

- Reaction crime prevention– The researcher established that reaction crime prevention is police activity. Reaction crime prevention does not guarantee the safety of the community, solely because the reaction is after an incident. This is confirmed by the majority of participants who explained that “Reactive is when we are acting to incident after it occurred.” One participant could not explain what reactive crime prevention is. Nineteen participants (19 out of 20 = 95%) responded by saying “Reactive crime prevention does not address the issues of crime as the main point is to arrest after crime already occurred.” This simply means acting after an incident.

The researcher establishes that effective policing consists of both proactive and reactive crime prevention. The component of reactive can be essential only after the conviction; the longer sentences can serve as crime prevention through deterrence.

- Principles of crime prevention– The majority of the participants could not explain the principles of crime prevention. Other participants were of the view that the principles of crime prevention are preventive actions. On the same question participants (4 out of 20 = 20%) thought that the principles of crime prevention are to address the needs of crime, visible policing. The least participants were of the view that the principles of crime prevention are all the approaches that can be used to prevent crime, for example, primary, secondary and tertiary prevention.

Although the majority of participants could not explain the principles of crime prevention, the researcher managed to establish that the principles of crime prevention deal with the effectiveness of all the approaches that can contribute to preventive actions that could address crime.

- Primary crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that primary crime prevention focuses on to eliminate the occurrence of crime at the early stages. Few participants did not know what primary crime prevention is. A few participants thought primary crime prevention entails roadblocks.

Although few participants were not familiar with the meaning of primary crime prevention, the researcher established that primary crime prevention seeks to address factors that may lead to crime at the early developmental stage.

- Secondary crime prevention – Participants (15 out of 20 = 75%) responded with various responses, but their responses were intertwined. These participants are of the view that secondary crime prevention engages the early stage of potential offenders. While few participants were not familiar with the meaning of secondary crime prevention, one participant was of the view that secondary crime prevention is not necessarily related to crime, but it has to do with not leaving items loose that might attract the criminal eyes.

It is significant to note that a number of participants are not familiar with the meaning of secondary crime prevention. Pertaining secondary crime prevention, the researcher established that it is a tool to reduce benefits to criminal acts and opportunity to commit crime by actually identifying potential offenders. For example, identify nyaope (drug) users, eliminate the opportunity for crime; police patrols at the parks invaded by this nyaope users.

- Tertiary crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that tertiary crime prevention is concerned with long-term crime prevention, programmes that will make offenders not to commit crime in the near future, while the least participants were not familiar with the term tertiary crime prevention. One of the participants (11 out of 20 = 55%) responded by giving an example for tertiary crime prevention, “Nowadays prisoner go to school while serving the sentences, that form part of rehabilitating them.”

While least participants were not familiar with the term tertiary crime prevention, the researcher established that tertiary crime prevention is the joint effort from the police up to the government to ensure that victimisation and re-offending do not occur again.

- Environmental crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that environmental crime prevention encourages the alteration of the physical environment in order to reduce the opportunity for crime to take place. Few



participants thought that environmental crime prevention is the protection of the farmers that got mealies and fruits; by doing patrols all over, we are preventing the criminals from stealing the environment. One participant was unable to explain what environmental crime prevention is.

The researcher established that the environmental crime prevention plays an important role in influencing the feeling of safety within the environment. The environmental crime prevention aims to reduce criminal activities by improving the layout planning and design of the built environment.

- The principles of environmental crime prevention– Participants responded with various responses. The majority of participants responded by giving an explanation example of the principle of environmental crime prevention, “A place with more light provide visibility, no crime perpetrator wants to be seen, light eliminate the possibilities of criminal activities.” Other participants were of the opinion that the principles of environmental crime prevention are activities that discourage crime not to occur or eliminate it by changing physical designs features. One participant was unable to explain what the principles of environmental crime prevention are.

The researcher established that the principles of crime prevention are the means to remedial identified vulnerable areas. The priorities of this means are to put a range of preventive measures, aimed at reducing the risk of crime not to happen.

- The effective deterrent to stop crime opportunities in the eyes of the public. The majority of participants believed that patrols could discourage criminal activities. The minority participants were of the view that police visibility can be used as the deterrent may eliminate crime opportunities. One participant suggested that the deterrent must have the ways that would allow the community to partake in crime prevention.

The research established that there is not a single form of deterrent that will be precisely used by police to stop crime, as crime varies from place to place. Police must know how to apply a range of interventions, according to the need of that specific juncture to prevent or reduce crime.

- Social crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that “Other crimes cannot be solved by police alone; social crime prevention is the coalition of the government police and the community to come up with an appropriate solution of the causes of crime in that community and prevent people from committing crime.” The minority were of the opinion that things that are happening nowadays such as cable theft, police should know what area these people are targeting to post people to do observation. “MPs must also highlight to people not to leave their houses unattended automatically if they knew that they are going to leave, they must use neighbourhood watch.” One participant was not familiar with the term social crime prevention and could not give a response.

The researcher established that social crime prevention provides a range of services, geared to enhance community confidence by addressing all the conditions in communities that encourage behaviour that may lead to crime. Government initiatives also support this approach.

- Developmental crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that developmental crime prevention is early intervention to crime, these include various training programmes, crime awareness to people who are at particular crime risk. Other participants were of the opinion that developmental crime prevention is a continuation of preventing crime for instance maybe crime happens at the particular time and come up with the intervention plan to halt it. One participant was not familiar with the term developmental crime prevention and could not give a response; this participant responded by saying, “I do not know.”

The research established that other participants were not familiar with the term developmental crime prevention, although the majority of participants had a fair understanding that developmental crime prevention early intervention to crime. This means fighting the grassroots that could cause criminality.

- The role-players in crime prevention– The majority of participants were able to identify the role-player in crime prevention; they responded that the role players

in crime prevention are “all government levels, police to sum up everybody that is willing to fight crime.”

The researcher established that crime prevention complexities need a joint effort, police alone cannot solve the crime problem, and they need a solid partnership with everybody that is willing to fight crime.

- Crime prevention mechanism– The majority of participants were able to explain crime prevention. Participants highlighted that crime prevention mechanism is measure, approach, methods that can have an impact on crime not to happen or reduce it. Least participants were unable to explain what is meant by crime prevention mechanism.

The researcher established that the crime prevention mechanism is interventions, vital to reduce crime whether being educative programmes or patrols.

#### **5.2.1.2 Research question two: What does MPAI 12/00 entail?’**

- The MPAI 12/00 – The majority of participants were of the view that MPAI 12/00 is an instruction document that provides instruction on the implementation and application of crime prevention in the Military Police Division. Some participants were of the opinion that the emphasis of MPAI 12/00, is like a module guideline to how as the police official you need to do your duties and responsibilities, guidelines on what should be done within the policing environment. Other participants thought MPAI 12/00 is crime prevention and has everything to do with crime prevention. One participant was unable to respond to the question.

The researcher established that MPAI 12/00 refers to crime prevention guidelines and procedure. It ensures the implementation and application of crime prevention instruction on MPD Structure’s crime prevention sections.

- The Context of MPAI 12/00– The majority of participants were of the opinion that MPAI 12/00 entails crime prevention strategies specifically patrol, roadblock, searches and observations, whereas the minority of participants thought it entails the step by step procedures as how should the military police officials

conduct themselves in the act of crime prevention, while one participant was unable to respond.

There was no disagreement in the responses to what MPAI 12/00 entails. The researcher established that MPAI 12/00 consists of principles which are applied with great success by various law enforcement authorities (SAPS and Metro Police).

- The preventative measures– In this study the majority of participants suggested that “MPAI 12/00 is something that you can apply to your way of planning. It can actually adapt to any person’s plan, according to any current situation on the ground, because how can you catch the criminal if you do not adopt to the style of what criminal is, are you going to catch the criminal?” “So, the clarity of your preventative action will depend on how you plan.”

The minority were of the view that the MPAI 12/00 is clear about the preventative measures because officers can execute patrols; roadblocks and it guide us. Participants (2 out of 20 = 10%) responded by “I have told I never read it I am not in the position to answer this question,” while one participant (1 out of 20 = 5%) was unable to respond to the question.

The researcher established that the participants do have the background of MPAI 12/00 on the preventative measure. Ocean Editorial Board (2010:427) states preventative measure actions taken before or after an incident have occurred to avoid reoccurrence, although some participants showed that they are reluctant to read this MPAI 12/00.

- The MPAI 12/00 defining crime prevention– The majority of participants (10 out of 20 = 50%) were unable to respond to the question. The minority of participants were of the view that MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention of military police as the task, to co-ordinate crime prevention in the DoD or SANDF. Least of participants were of the opinion that the MPAI 12/00 does not define crime prevention and gave an explanatory example, “I am going to take you to Pretoria West, and people there do not dressed the way that you dressed. Now you must change your dressing to fit into the people and environment. That is the way MPAI is written it what you think and implement.” One participant responded that

MPAI 12/00 defines crime prevention as zero tolerance to crime. Another participant responded that MPAI 12/00 states that crime prevention is something that has a negative effect on other people and is prohibited by law.

The researcher established that MPAI 12/00 does define crime prevention from the Military Police point of view. The Military Police co-ordinate crime prevention within the DoD or SANDF, MPAI 12/00 failed to explain how the MPs may overcome South Africa (1957:sec. 52(1)(b)) which stipulates any person who is on reasonable ground suspected to commit an offence under this code, may be arrested. It further goes to subsection (3) of the same section which advocates that an officer is not liable to arrest under subsection (2) by any person other than an officer.

- The MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view– The majority of participants were of the view that MPAI 12/00 does define crime prevention from a proactive point of view stating that, patrols are visible and “Everybody can see that the MPs are on the outlook for offenders,” “although we are few but we try to be proactive,” whereas one participant was with disagreement that MPAI 12/00 does not define crime prevention from a proactive point of view failed to support the disagreement. One participant was unable to respond to the question. Another participant responded, “I do not want to say yes or no because I have never read it.”

The researcher established that the majority of the participants were of the view that patrol is proactive as it may count act criminal activities. The literature defines proactive crime prevention as action taken before the crime can occur.

- The relevance of MP 12/00 to crime prevention- The majority of the participants were of the view that the relevance of MPAI 12/00 rests on Military Police because crime prevention is flexible it only needs initiative. The minority of participants were unable to respond whether MPAI 12/00 is relevant to crime prevention, they believed that “MPAI 12/00 is the starting block of how to start thinking, planning and how to execute the plan comes from within the person. Taking the starting block of MPAI 12/00, creating a new plan and new strategy of how to keep crime prevention.”

The least of participants were of the opinion that “MPAI 12/00 supposed to be relevant they feel that there is more information left out that was supposed to be there so that it can be easy to the MPs to perform our duties.” One participant was unable to respond to the relevance of MP 12/00 to crime prevention.

The researcher established that the originators of MPAI 12/00 wanted to explore the facet of crime prevention as it presented globally, but the originators of MPAI 12/00 failed to do the synthesis of crime prevention policies so as to give direction to a step by step clear crime prevention, this was left to the participants to decide when performing crime prevention duties.

#### **5.2.1.3 Research question three: How should the Military Police prevent crime?**

- The functions of the MPs, according to the Defence Act – The responses of the vast majority of participants were without disagreement. They responded that the functions of the Military Police according to South Africa (2002) are as follows: “Maintenance of law and order, prevent and combat crime as well as investigation.”

The researcher established that although the functions of the MPs are clearly stated in the Defence Act, a synthesis of South Africa (2002:sec. 31) which stipulates the appointment, functions of the Military Police and South Africa (1957:sec. 52(2)) which limits the MPs functioning, was not done. South Africa (2002:sec. 31(7)) needs to define clearly as to what the peace officer is.

- The Military Police role in crime prevention within military proclaimed areas– All the participants were of the view that the role of the military Police in crime prevention is to prevent crime.

The researcher established that the role of the MPs within the DoD includes the preventing and combating of crime as MPs are multifaceted. The legislation only states the prevention and combating of crime does not include the how part of it, it was left to the MPD to come up with the how part.

- The considerations to revise the role of the MPs in crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that the role of the MPs in crime

prevention supposed to be revised, according to the situation of every day, things change, and the modus operandi used by the criminals almost changes every day. Other participants were of the opinion that “more emphasis of the MPs crime prevention should be based on intelligence-related issues.”

From the participant’s statements, the researcher established that there is a feeling that this MP crime prevention they are doing is something that is designed just to keep them busy. It can be argued that this MP crime prevention is something that these participants are not proud of.

- The importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within military proclaimed area– The majority of participants response is as follows; “The importance of the MP crime prevention section within military proclaimed area is to perform crime prevention duties.” Whereas the minority of participants were of the opinion that “Is to ensure that the military environment is crime free.” Least of participants were of the view that “The importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military proclaimed area is the enforcement of military discipline.”

The researcher established that there is a contradiction in terms of South Africa (2002) and South Africa (1957). Defence Act appointment any soldier to perform police function, whereas in terms of the Military Discipline Code the Military Police supposed to enforce it to the SANDF.

- The impact of the MPs current approach contribution in crime prevention– The majority of participants believed that the current approach of the MP crime prevention section does not contribute towards making the military police proclaimed area a safer environment.

“With the activities that are happening lately within our country, the threat that is happening within the country, it is imperative that our approach should be improved we are looking at situations of bomb threat, we are looking at the situation of bomb at the ATMs, things like that we need to have a proactive policing, that is well trained to identify things like that, currently most of our members are trained in disciplinary aspects.”

The minority of participants are of the view that “For what we have, up to so far ... actual I can say we do have that capability ... we have capabilities, but we do not have resources, but we are trying.” One participant was not sure of an answer.

Considering what the majority of participants said it is clear that the MPs does not have a right direction towards crime prevention.

- The definition of visible policing– All the participants said that the definition of visible policing is “To be at the right place, at the right time.” What do these participants mean:

“For MPs to apply or implement visible policing as the crime prevention members, they must do analysis; they must not just do crime prevention blindly, they need to have hotspots, need to know what type of crimes they are trying to prevent and how that is being perpetuated.”

From the participants respond the researcher established that the participants understand the meaning and the value of visible policing.

- Military Police engagement in visible policing– The participants’ responses were without disagreement; all the participants were of the view that the more there are visible, the lesser crime will happen.

From the participants’ responses, the researcher established that the participants are willing to participate in visible policing and they believe that visible policing is the way to eliminate crime.

- Describing visible policing– Participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded that:

Visible policing entails to be in the eyes of the public, but you cannot be driving up and down with the blue light, you need to know exactly what you want to achieve, identify the crime, the manner the crime is happening or let me say the elements surrounded the crime, you then ensure in your visible policing that you break those elements down, then you prohibit the perpetrator execute any of those elements of that crime.



The researcher established that the participants were well vested with visible policing and aware of the significant contribution of it to reduce crime.

- Sector policing- The majority of participants were of the view that, "Sector policing is a division of a large area into smaller manageable areas called sector and each area is assigned with the police to solve crime challenges of the area."

From the participants' responses, it is clear that the participants have a common understanding of sector policing and are informed of the purpose of sector policing.

- Military Police involvement in sector policing- Participants (13 out of 20 = 65%) were of the opinion that MPs could be involved in sector policing, "Through proper training and implementation." The minority of participants responded by affirming that: "Currently we at Thaba Tshwane, we took an initiative we implemented this approach." Least of participants responded by appointing out: "First of all, it's hard to be involved in sector policing due lack of resources, but I believe sector policing is the answer to this crime rate going up now and then." One participant said, "I have never received training on sector policing, so I am not in the position to tell how we can become part of it."

Although the minority of participants confirmed the initiative implementation at Thaba Tshwane MP Office, the researcher established that the capabilities linked to sector policing are not there. This is confirmed by the majority of participants who pointed out that proper training is essential and supported by the least of participants who mention lack of resources to capacitate sector policing.

- The crime prevention strategy that can suit the Military Police in military proclaimed area – the large majority of participants were of the opinion that visible policing can suit the Military Police as the crime prevention strategy in military proclaimed area, while others were of the view that sector policing could be the strategy. Meanwhile, the least of participants could not refer to any specific model they believed what works for Thaba Tshwane MP Station, cannot work in Waterkloof in Wonderboom, or Dequar.

Two participants responded by saying "they do not know,"

... first manpower is the problem, as you can see we got three members on the ground to do crime prevention so if maybe we were more, we were supposed to deploy the members in different places, unlikely the people who want to commit crime they know that if one person is on leave, one sick leave then one is left, they know that they can do whatever and if we had enough strength, we can do patrols, roadblocks and everything can be done to prevent equipment from being stolen.

- Whereas one participant was of the opinion that “the current strategy that we are using should be blinded by the more emphasis on the intelligence based” and the other participant suggested community policing as an approach to suit the Military Police.

Base on the responses of the participants any strategy of crime prevention can suit the MPs; two noteworthy participants highlighted that the shortfall of any strategy that can be appropriately chosen for the Military Police would be the shortage of personnel.

- The importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within the military environment – The vast majority of participants were of the view that the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention is to share crime responsibility and crime problems within your proclaimed military environment. The minority of participants were of the view that the importance of engaging the various stakeholders in crime prevention is that the community becomes part of crime prevention then this means more eyes and ears that will feed the police with information.

All the participants responses interlinked, the most commonality for their responses they value the importance of engaging the community.

- The value of the community involvement in crime prevention– All participants (20 out of 20 = 100%) responded by saying “It is not all the crimes that can be solved by police; there are crimes that I call behind the scene happening within the families we need the community to inform us about those crimes.”

The researcher established that the participants do value community involvement in crime prevention and these participants acknowledge crime prevention as a shared responsibility.

- Community involvement in crime prevention– The majority of participants their responses intertwined, they responded by saying, “Our community remember are the soldiers because we are serving in the SANDF and we got meetings, presentations normally presented by the Area Provost Marshal to the stakeholder,” “we explain what the role of the MP is and try to explain what is our main job, if they see something what must they do, the community knows what must be done maybe they see that this person is doing something or is attempting to steal they know that they must pick up the phone and report what is done and because of the normal duty of crime prevention, we are disturbing the criminals not to commit crime.”

Other participants, they interact with the community by means of distribution of the pamphlets, making them aware of the crime in the area. One participant responded by saying that “Maybe MPs do interact, but I do not remember.”

The researcher established that the participants were aware of effective community crime prevention awareness programmes, which can improve crime prevention initiative within the soldier’s community and integrated crime problemsolving.

- Sustainability of the Military Police crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that for sustainability the Military Police crime prevention needs to be reinforced by more manpower, equipment, competent members and flexible crime prevention strategies to be defined that would suit the areas of responsibility. While the minority of participants responded by saying “What we must do is to equip the members on crime prevention; at least undergo training in line with the current situation as for reaction if ever the criminals use one of this method we can respond.”

Some participants were of the opinion that:

... the whole setup of crime prevention not only on the lower, even at the higher HQ need reorganisation, people who will come to offices and motivate members

to do the job. One participant was of believing that there must be the demarcation of power from the minister of defence/the chief then the MP can be able to do their work professionally and diligently.

Although there is the existence of crime prevention within the MPD structures, the researcher established that insufficient resource and the lack of flexible crime prevention strategy can harm sustainability of the MPs crime prevention.

- The effort to strengthen the MPs crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that more resources, manpower and skills for members are needed to strengthen the Military Police crime prevention.

The least of participants were of the opinion that functionally they need to strengthen regular mobile patrols, foot patrols and the Military Police must always be visible for police visibility.

Although the participants' responses differ, there are not in contradiction; all participants agreed that Military Police's effort must be strengthened functionally. Furthermore, more policing resources must be drawn in order to maximise the crime prevention efforts.

- The status of the Military Police crime prevention equipment– Participants (18 out of 20 = 90%) responded by saying; "the status of the MPs equipment is poor; more input is needed on equipment for improvement." Other participants were of the view that the status of the MPs is good.

From the majority of participants the researcher established that Military Police need improvement on crime prevention equipment. Despite the fact that other participants believe the status of MPs crime prevention is good, poor equipment or insufficient resources cannot make crime prevention to gain momentum.

- Crime prevention strategies used by the MPs as an intervention strategy to fight crime in the military proclaimed area– The vast of majority confirmed that currently MPs are involved in visible policing by means of patrols and roadblocks. One participant confirmed sector policing as the intervention that is

used. While another participant indicated that community policing is the crime prevention strategy that is used by the MPs to fight crime as an intervention.

Considering all the responses from the participants, MPs do have crime prevention intervention in place to create a secured condition in their proclaimed areas, but patrols and roadblocks are not enough to create a new paradigm of community participation in crime prevention.

- Situational crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that situational crime prevention deals with the removal of provocations that will reward the offender to commit crime and it increase the cost of being caught. Only one participant was unable to respond as to what situational crime prevention is.

Participants were in agreement and familiar with the meaning of situational crime prevention.

- The involvement of the MPs in situational crime prevention– The majority of participants believe that MPs can be involved in situational crime prevention. MPs need to be trained in numbers and engagement of the community through road shows, and this must be done to educate the community on specific crimes of situational crime prevention and how to prevent those crimes. One participant was unable to respond as, “How MPs can be involved in situational crime prevention?”

Participants’ responses were without contradictions and showed general experience of the participants; they suggested, “Training,” as the response pertaining to, “How MPs can be involved in situational crime prevention?”

- The SAPS influential training on the daily routine of MPs– Participants (18 out of 20 = 90%) responded that:

“Based on the time, now the National Crime Prevention Strategic outline the needs to address the fact that the crime that happens within the department of defence and within the DoD crime is mostly perpetuated by people who come from outside, and we got more civilians who are committing in the DoD the South

African Police Service-oriented training that I received at the Military Police School plays a major role.”

Two participants could not answer as they said, they received the other basic training not SAPS at that time of our training.

Despite the two participants who were not trained on SAPS training. The majority of participants believe that the SAPS training, received at the Military Police School is adequate to underpin the daily routine crime prevention of the MPs.

- The advantages of the SAPS – Oriented training to the Military Police crime prevention section– The majority of participants were of the view that the advantage of the SAPS training it gives MPs more knowledge. Other participants highlighted that they did not receive such training as the results they cannot respond. Another participant responded by saying:

“I am not very sure but the training from the MP school is very discouraging because we always know we just do the training that is not accreditation and so on and so forth, so I am not going to be specifically on crime prevention only, generally going to MP School does not really give much moral to us members of the MPD.”

From the participant’s responses, the researcher established that the SAPS training enhance the effectiveness of the MPs crime prevention. The content of SAPS training curriculum is as follows:

- Module 13- Community policing
- Module 14- sector policing
- Module 15- Crime prevention approaches, techniques and planning

### **5.3 Secondary findings**

In this study, the following secondary findings emanated from this study from the literature and the interviews conducted with the participants.

- The meaning of crime– Although the participants responded with different views, all their views intertwined were with no contradictions. The majority of participants were of the view that crime is the unlawful doing that is punishable

by law. Other participants were of the opinion that crime is any unwanted act condemned by society. While other participants referred to crime as unwanted doing that can be taken to court and a person can be found guilty and punished to a prescribed sentence. Without any disagreement, two of the least of participants responded that crime is an unlawful act that is condemned by the law. The unlawful conduct was concurred by the other participant.

In this study, the researcher established that according to Zinn and Dintwe (2016:440), crime is an unlawful and blameworthy conduct which is defined by law as a crime and for which punishment prescribed.

- Factors contributing to crime– The majority of participants believe that the causes of crime are due to so many factors, jealous, poverty and so forth. Other participants were of the view that unemployment is the contributing factor to crime, while the minority of participants highlighted the desire to commit a crime as a factor in the cause of crime. Participants (3 out of 20 = 15%) thought that improper parental guidance is the cause of crime. The least of participants were of the view that the cause of crime is the combination of poverty, improper guidance.

The researcher established that economic depression can influence the criminality. Poverty cannot necessarily be a leading factor in crime causing due to the fact of people committing a white-collared crime, in this instance, it is rich and high positioned people committing this type of crime. The researcher agrees with the fact that it is easy to manipulate poor people due to money factor so as unemployed people. This view does not necessarily mean that unemployed people are criminals.

- The National Crime Prevention Strategy– The majority participants were of the view that National Crime Prevention Strategy is the tackling of crime by Government; looking at factors which make people commit a crime. Few participants were unable to explain what National Crime Prevention Strategy is. Others were of the opinion that “The National Crime Prevention Strategy is an organisation whose task is mainly to direct South Africa, as to how police should conduct themselves to reduce crime and I think we cannot eliminate crime from any society.”

In this study, the researcher established that some participants were not familiar with the concept of the NCPS, while the majority of participants believed that the NCPS is government regarding the prevention of crime as the National priority.

- Crime control– The majority of participants had a similar view that crime control means to keep crime under control not to reach a widespread high degree, although the minority of participants thought that with crime control, “If you can prevent, then you still have to control, and you do not stop there from preventing one. You must still carry on with the controlling of it.” Least of participants were of the opinion that crime control is reactive policing.

The researcher established that crime control is the traditional way of policing. It does not guarantee safety to the community as it controls crime not to reach a certain degree.

- The mission statement of the MPD regarding crime prevention– The majority of participants were of the view that the MPD does not have a mission statement with regard to crime prevention. Meanwhile, the minority of participants were unable to respond to a question. Other participants believe that the mission statement of the MPD on crime prevention is to strive to render the service that is required by the community we serve within the DoD. The least participants were of the opinion that,

“... if the vision or mission is not given then there is a problem, when I go to work I must be able to be creative enough, I must understand my job because if I do not understand my job, the mission and vision will fail, that means my planning would not be inline.”

“But if the vision or mission is inline, I will strategise all my plans around the vision then I will get the mission right. If I do not understand the vision, I will take the vision like guidelines.”

The researcher established that the participants are not familiar with the core information of the MPD. The participants failed to come up with the agreed responses to the question.



- The Constitutional mandate of the SANDF– The majority of participants were of the view the Constitutional mandate of the SANDF is to protect the inhabitants of South Africa and uphold the law. In terms of South Africa (1996:sec. 201(2)) the SANDF can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in co-operation with the SAPS.

While the least of participant responded that South Africa (1996:sec. 201(1)) advocates that the SANDF must be a disciplined force, therefore, the Military Police is the entity that must do crime prevention in order to maintain the SANDF as a disciplined force. One participant was of the view that the constitutional mandate of the SANDF is to combat crime. Meanwhile, another participant was unable to respond.

The researcher established that most participants were aware of the Constitutional mandate of the SANDF, although other participant believed that the mandate of the Military Police is derived from South Africa (1996:sec. 201(1)) which advocates that the SANDF must be maintained as the disciplined force. This statement is vague and open to the future researcher as it can be linked to every human resource HR and so on.

- The relevance of MPAl 12/00 in term of the Constitution– The majority of the participants were of the view that MPAl 12/00 is relevant to South Africa (1996:sec. 201(2)) which stipulates that SANDF can prevent and combat crime, maintain law and order within the country in co-operation with the SAPS. Some participants argued that MPAl 12/00 is relevant to the Constitution because there is nowhere in the MPAl 12/00 that the policy framework is defined. Least of participants were unable to respond to the relevance of MPAl 12/00 in terms of the Constitution. At the same time, other participants gave the response that “in some thought, I think yes because I am not sure I did not read the MPAl I do not want to say yes or no.”

The researcher established that the MPAl 12/00 is not relevant to the Constitution; Military Police is an entity or the police agency within the force, solely operating as police without the co-operation of the SAPS except in joint operation.

- The relevance of MPAI 12/00 in terms of South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1))– The participants had different views on this question. The majority of participants were of the view that the MPA 12/00 does address the need as advocated in South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) that the MPs must maintain law and order, prevent crime with our proclaimed area.

The minority of participants were of the opinion that MPAI 12/00 does not address the needs of South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) because in the MPAI 12/00 there is nowhere where MPs' framework is discussed and MPAI 12/00 was supposed to be written in the sense that clarifies issues. One participant enlightened that the importance of the MP crime prevention section within the military environment is that once MPs leave everything to chance, people will always exploit the opportunity but could not answer the question. Another participant responded regarding the MPAI 12/00: "It is guidelines which is not detailed and at some stage we use the Commanders initiative."

The researcher established that there was no correlation between the participants. Some participants are informed of the MPAI 12/00 whereas other seems not to be informed. The MPAI 12/00 does not cover South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)), as a framework for the Military Police crime prevention section.

- The primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention. The researcher asked the participants the primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention; the majority of the participants responded by saying, "The primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention are strategic priorities to address crime, make DoD environment a free crime area." The minority of participants responded as follows, "Reduce or eliminate crime if possible."

One participant responded with "The primary objectives, the way I understand, it includes consultation with the community." Another participant emphasised in this way, "the primary objectives of the MPs is to prevent crime and to investigate crime to the last and not to let people go to court with the person who is not even guilty or something like that." The other participant was unable to respond.

The researcher established that there is no constantly on the job training to nurture the level of understanding of the Military Police crime prevention members, although the vast majority of participants were having the insight of the primary objectives of the military police regarding crime prevention.

- The link between the aim of the MPAI 12/00 and that of the NCPS– The majority of participants felt that even MPAI 12/00 is guidelines but the objective of it is to prevent crime. Meanwhile, the minority of participants were unable to respond. One participant indicated that MPAI 12/00 is not specific. Another participant was of the opinion that there is no link between the aim of the MPAI 12/00 and that of the NCPS.

The researcher established that the aim of the MPAI 12/00 nor NCPS is not written in the MPAI 12/00. This made it difficult to compare the two. There no explanation with regard to the aim.

- The vision statement of the MPD to that of the NCPS regarding crime prevention- The majority of participants were of the view that the vision statement of the MPD is in line with that of the NCPS:

“Remember within us we are working with different law enforcement agencies so the guidelines that we also inherit ... the strategy that we plan on it is based on the national crime; because remember crime as it happens outside, it has the influence within the military and the people of the military also has an influence on the environmental outside.”

- The minority of participants revealed that “As far as MPAI 12/00 is concern none of the vision statement is discussed in it,” while the least participants were unable to respond. One participant emphasised that the vision statement of the MPD is not in line with that of the NCPS. Another participant put it forward that “I am not sure because I never read MPAI 12/00.”

The researcher established most participants were using their discretion to respond to the question “Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statements of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention.” The Military Police does not have the vision statement base on crime prevention.

- The MP involvement in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS– The majority of participants in this study revealed that the NCPS does not involve the Military Police in crime prevention. The minority of participants indicated that the Military Police is an entity within the Army may be the NCPS involve the Military Police under SANDF. Least of participants were unable to respond.

The researcher established that the participants were unfamiliar with the NCPS as they expressed various views when asked: “Does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention.”

- How MPs are involved in crime prevention by virtue of the NCPS– The majority of participants were of the view the NCPS involved the whole SANDF, and the Military Police derived their tasking from SANDF. The minority of participants were unable to respond to the question. “The NCPS does not involved the Military Police, we just adopt it,” respond by the least of participants. Another participant responded as follows: “It is not clear how does the NCPS involve the Military Police because it is not written on the MPAI 12/00 then that put me on the difficult stand to give you an answer because now I must use assumption which is not right.” The other participant believed that the goal of the NCPS is to eliminate crime, even though the NCPS does not involve the Military Police, but Military Police are police and fight crime.

The researcher established that the NCPS does not involve the Military Police, due to the fact that Military Police are appointed in terms of (South Africa, 2002:sec. 30(1)). The NCPS involves the SAPS in crime prevention as the SAPS is commissioned by the Constitution (South Africa, 1996) to prevent crime that is why the SAPS Act compliment the Constitution.

- The effectiveness of the content of the MPAI 12/00 on the current democratic modern policing within the SANDF– The responses provided by the majority of participants revealed that the MP 121/00 information is not current maybe a review must be done on it; to see what is still current. In the meantime, the minority of participants said that:

The MPAI 12/00 remains the basic, it is the starting block whether I have done crime prevention twenty years ago or whether I am going to do crime prevention tomorrow and is the starting block of how to start thinking, planning and the relevance is about how you plan out of your thinking.

Least of participants were unable to respond to the effectiveness of the content of the MPAI 12/00 on the current democratic modern policing within the SANDF.

The researcher established that the MPAI 12/00 is not linked to any policy and the record of amended of MPAI 12/00 (MP Agency 2001:v) shows that from the day the MPAI 12/00 was written there is no new or additional information written in the MPAI 12/00. Criminality is regarded as a strategic issue globally; criminality changes daily so as new crime prevention interventions are initiated pertaining to the changes in criminality.

- The extent of the MP Division involving crime prevention members to give inputs when the MPAI 12/00 is revised– The vast majority of participants revealed that the MPD does not involve crime prevention members when revising these documents for inputs. One participant gave a response that “The HQ normal request for inputs, six months prior to the process of revision.”

The researcher established that there is a gap between the MPD policymakers and crime prevention section on the structures, role players are not providers of inputs, and this might cause tension as a responsibility to execute rests on Military Police crime prevention section.

- The Military Police jurisdiction over civilians– The majority of participants were aware of the mandate the Military Police have over the civilian, “We cannot arrest civilian people, but we can apply Criminal Procedure Act citizen arrest then hand them within 24 hours or as soon as possible but within 24 hours to SAPS.” One participant was of the view that Military Police have the mandate over the civilians.

The researcher established that although the majority of participants were aware of their jurisdiction over the civilians. They feel that this does not link with what is written at the back of their appointment card, “Military Police has the same powers,

function and duties as a member of the SA Police Services,” (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(2)(a)). The Defence Act failed to state that this section refers to when Military Police perform their duties within their proclaimed military areas.

## **5.4 RECOMMENDATIONS**

Emanating out of the findings of this research the following recommendations are made:

### **5.4.1 Research question one: What does crime prevention entail?**

Crime prevention entails crime prevention model, which can be linked to three types of crime prevention approaches namely: primary, secondary and tertiary prevention. These three approaches can be used at any different stage of tackling crime prevention, from the initiative up to the taken off the henceforth precaution in advance to eliminate crime.

Participants were able to distinguish some of these approaches. Crime prevention approaches are not equally successful that is why they are employed at a different level of prevention.

Therefore, for the Military Police to be effective and efficient they need to acknowledge causes of crime, and they must have a sound understanding of what causes crime, this is essential to determine the approach that would be linked to the solution to suit the military environment. It is recommended that the Military Police crime prevention use multi-factorial and multifaceted approaches to eliminate crime as there no single causes of crime effectively.

- This study recommends that for significantly eliminating crime, proactive and reactive crime prevention are necessary. Proactive crime prevention guarantees the safety of the community if done consistently in the form of visible policing it may discourage criminal activities. Reactive crime prevention is necessary to ensure that the judicial process is followed until the conviction of the perpetrator.
- For effective crime prevention, Military Police Officials need a comprehensive partnership with the community and must be accessible to the community they serve. It is recommended that networking with the community must be

established with clear mission intended outcomes, as crime prevention is everyone's responsibility; the MPs alone cannot fight crime.

#### **5.4.2 Research question two: What does MPAI 12/00 entail?**

MP 12/00 entails execution and crime prevention administration for the Military Police crime prevention section. Participants have identified various factors which need attention as they regard MP 12/00 as the bible for the entire MPD crime prevention section.

- MPAI 12/00 does define crime prevention. There is a serious interpretation that has been omitted in the MPAI 12/00 as it limits the Military Police crime prevention, South Africa (1957:52(1)(b)) (a non-commissioned officer can arrest an officer) need to be clarified as it somehow contradicts the definition of MPAI 12/00. It is recommended that a clear policy guideline be developed whereby the synthesis of the MPAI 12/00 and the defence status must be done. The relevance of the Defence Act, South Africa (2002:sec. 31(1)) must be defined against (South Africa, 1957:sec. 52(1)(b)).
- The relevance of MP 12/00 to crime prevention, MPAI 12/00 is relevant to crime prevention. Other participants pointed out that there is information left out in the MPAI 12/00, for example, Military Police mission statement on crime prevention and the vision, some participants were of the view that MPAI 12/00 needs an update. Therefore, it is recommended that MPAI 12/00 be updated on the basis of other crime prevention vision policies so that it can be comparable (for example National Development Plan vision 2030 on crime prevention). Whereby the role of the Military police within the military would be clearly defined.
- Other participants were not familiar with the MP 12/00 and were not certain on their responses. Therefore, it recommended that the in-service or job training be done to re-familiarise members of their environment.

#### **5.4.3 Research question three: How should the Military Police prevent crime?**

Participants were familiar with the functions of the Military Police but lack the insight of the Defence Act (South Africa, 2002:sec. 31(2)(a)). The legitimacy of the Defence Act, South Africa (2002) is questionable on the role of the Military Police in crime

prevention. The SAPS is commissioned by law, and Military Police are appointed by the chief of the SANDF. South Africa Defence Act (2002:sec. 31(1)(a)) clearly stipulates the role of the Military Police in crime prevention is prevention and combating crime; it does not go further to give details as to where or how.

In terms of South Africa Defence Act (2002:sec. 31(2)(a)), the MPs have the same powers and duties as the member of SAPS again it does not stipulate where or how. This is left to Military Police Officials to use their discretion as to say “within the military area.” Then Military Police found themselves adapting to SAPS culture pertaining to policing but within their military environment.

It is recommended that a re-visit of South Africa Defence Act (2002) pertaining the Military Police functions and appointment must be done. Proper reviewing of MPAI 12/00 can then be done because a sound strategy delivers valid content. Members on the ground may then be briefed on the amendment. As for current, there are no military statute that stipulates that crime prevention is the primary task of the MPs is crime prevention.

- Participants indicated the shortage of manpower and the resources at the various Military Police Offices. Although budget constraint is the problem of all government departments, it is recommended that the Military Police Division avail suitable crime prevention resources and manpower that can absorb from the reserve force.
- Pertaining suitable crime prevention strategy to be used by the Military Police, various techniques, strategies, model and approaches were mentioned by the participants. With all the mentioned strategies from the participant's point of view, showed that there was an indication of the necessary cause of action against crime. The best crime prevention strategy needs to be implemented to fight crime. It appears without doubts that the Military Police crime prevention is functioning without a clear strategy and crime prevention mission statement.

It is recommended that a review must be done on the entire crime prevention with the aim of making the MPs more effective and accountable to the military proclaimed area.



- Although the vast majority of participants received training on the SAPS orientated training, the articulation of the instruction should be complimented. Currently, the MPAI 12/00 is not written of SAPS reference, but the Military Police are SAPS orientated trained. It is therefore recommended that the instruction should be realigned so as to have quality training because crime prevention curriculum was supposed to be written out of MPAI 12/00.
- By virtue of the objectives of South Africa Constitution (1996) that emphasise to all government departments to develop a common vision and understanding around crime prevention, for safer military environment Military Police need to concentrate on crime prevention. Military Police can design an effective crime prevention model that would restore a better image of the Military Police crime prevention within the military proclaimed area.

Various suggestion pertaining a crime prevention model that the Military Police crime prevention can adapt were voiced out, participants believe that Military Police can adapt to:

- Sector policing
- Visible policing
- Community policing

Although situational, social and environmental crime prevention was discussed with the participants during the interview. Participants ought to suggest the above three models, as Military Police is currently functional; one can conclude that there are no shared values of crime prevention within the Military Police. It is therefore recommended that the Military Police must examine the current capabilities and competencies of their current crime prevention model through SWOT analysis, thereafter develop an enduring and effective crime prevention model, which is aligned with Military Police training.

#### **5.4.4 Recommendations for further research**

Emanating from what the researcher gathered during this study, this study further recommends an exploration be carried out on the following aspects of the MP Division to enhance quality service delivery:

- Military Police Agency Instructions (MPAIs)
- Pathway training of the Military Police Officials

The researcher believes that quality instruction and training lead to effective and efficient service delivery. This thought requires thorough research.

## **5.5 CONCLUSION**

This study was conducted to unfold the newest knowledge on crime prevention that would enhance the effectiveness and efficiency of the Military Police within the military proclaimed area. This study aims to determine how the Military Police should prevent crime within the military proclaimed area. It can be confirmed therefore that the aim was researched, and relevant information unfolded.

The researcher hopes that the findings and recommendation of this study will empower the entire Military Police Division from level two to level four. The researcher hopes that the Staff Officer's at level two will enhance the Military Police crime prevention on the structure with the information revealed by this study, and update the MPAI 12/00 so as to enhance the technical skills of the Military Police Crime Prevention members.

## 6. LIST OF REFERENCES

- Albiston, C. 2010. Institutional Inequality. USA: California. From: <https://www.law.berkeley.edu/files/chefs?KT-Institutional-Inequality.pdf>. Accessed 31 May 2018).
- Albrecht, J. & Das, D.K. 2011. *Effective Crime Reduction Strategies*. New York: CRC Press.
- Albrecht, J.F., Dow, M.C., Plecas, D. & Das, D.K. 2015. *Policing Major Events: Perspectives from Around the World*. New York: CRC Press.
- Anney, V.N. 2014. Ensuring the Quality of the Finding of Qualitative Research: Looking at Trustworthiness Criteria, 5(2), 272 – 281.
- Arrington, R. 2007. *Crime Prevention: The Law Enforcement Officers Practical Guide*. UK: JB Publishers.
- Ashworth, R. 2011. *Success: Utter Common Sense*. UK: Author House.
- Atlas, R.I. 2008. *21 Century Security and CPTED: Designing for Critical Infrastructure*. London: CRC Press.
- Australian and New Zealand Crime Prevention Senior Officers Group (ANZCP-SOG). 2012. *National Crime Prevention Framework*. Australian: Australia Institution of Criminology.
- Australian Corporations and Security Legislation. 2012. Corporations Act 2001, ASIC Act 2001, Related Regulation. Volume 1. 1 January 2012. From: <http://bboks.google.co.za/books?id=moln-jcxs&pg=PA1203&dp.pdf>. (Accessed 29 June 2017).
- Avila, H. 2007. *Theory of Legal Principles*. Netherlands: Springer.
- Babbie, E. 2010. *The Practice of Social Research*. Belmont: Wadsworth.
- Beach, B. 2012. *Analyzing Foreign Policy*. UK: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Bernard, H.R. & Ryan, G.W. 2010. *Analyzing Qualitative Data Systematic Approach*. California: SAGE.
- Blake, N. 2010. *Designing Social Research*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: Polity Press.
- Boba, R. 2005. *Crime Analysis and Crime Mapping*. USA: SAGE.
- Braun, V. & Clarke, V. 2013. *Successful Qualitative Research a Practical Guide for Beginners*. London: SAGE.
- Brown, J.M. & Campbell, E.A. 2010. *The Cambridge Handbook of Forensic Psychology*. UK: Cambridge University Press.

- Brownlee, J., Schraw, G. & Belthelser, D. 2012. *Personal Epistemology and Teacher Education*. New York: Taylor & Francis Group.
- Burger, J. 2006. *Crime Prevention Perspective: A Strategic approach to Policing and the Prevention of Crime in South Africa*. International Police Executive Symposium Working Paper No 10. Tshwane: Crime and Justice Programme Institute for Security Studies.
- Burger, J. 2007. *Crime Combating in Perspective a Strategic Approach to Policing and the Prevention of the Crime in South Africa*. IPES Working Paper No 10. Pretoria: Crime and Justice Programme, Institute for Security Studies Tshwane.
- Burger, J. 2007. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Policing in South Africa*. Pretoria: Crime and Justice Programme institute for Security Studies Tshwane.
- Canadian Military Police. 2013. *Evaluation of Military Police Services*. Canada: Chief Review services.
- Canadian National Defence. 2013. *Canadian Military Journal*. Volume 13. Number 4. Autumn 2013. Canada: Canadian Military.
- From: [http://www.publications.gc.ca/collections/collection\\_2013/dn-nd/D12-8-13-4-eng.pdf](http://www.publications.gc.ca/collections/collection_2013/dn-nd/D12-8-13-4-eng.pdf). (Accessed 31 May 2018).
- Cassell, C. 2015. *Conducting Research Interviews for Business and Management Students*. London: SAGE.
- Chade, M.B. 1997. *The Police in India*. India: Atlantic Publishers and Distributors.
- Chan, Z.C.Y. Fung, Y.L. & Chein, W.T. 2013. Bracketing in Phenomenology: Only Undertaken in the Data Collection and Analysis? The Qualitative Report 18, 1–9. From: <http://www.nova.edu/SSS/QR/QR18/Chan59.pdf>. (Accessed 05 Oct 15)
- Chilisa, B. 2012. *Indigenous Research Methodologies*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Constitution... see South Africa. 1996.
- Coomber, R., Donnermeyer, J.F., McElrath, K. & Scott, J. 2014. *Key Concepts in Crime and Society*. London: SAGE.
- Cottrell, R.R. & McKenzie, J.F. 2011. *Health Promotion and Education Research: Using the Five Chapter Thesis/Dissertation Model*. London: SAGE.
- Crank, J.P., Murray, R.K. & Irlbeck, D.M. 2012. *Missing – Based Policing*. New York: CRC Press.
- Crawford, J. 2013. *Strategy for the Change Management*. Second Edition. UK: CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform. From: <http://www>.

[projectsmart.co.uk/white-paper-strategy-for-change-management.pdf](http://projectsmart.co.uk/white-paper-strategy-for-change-management.pdf).

(Accessed 30 June 2017).

- Creswell, J.W. 2014. *Research Design Qualitative, Quantitative and Mixed Approach*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Creswell, J.W. 2013. *Qualitative Inquiry and Research Design: Choosing among five approaches*. 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Crewe, R., Le Roux, P., Mouton, J., Reynecke, F., Schoeman, C., Schutte, N. & Smit, J. 2001. *Policing 1: Study guide for PLC 101 – P*. 3<sup>rd</sup> edition. Pretoria. University of South Africa.
- Cronje, S. & Zietsman, J.M. 2009. FET College Series Criminology L3: Reduce and Prevent Crime and Victimisation. Cape Town: Parsoned Edu SA.
- Cronkrite, C.L. 2013. *Law Enforcement and Justice Administration Strategy for the 21<sup>st</sup> Century*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. USA: Jones & Bartlett Learning.
- Czech Republic Crime Prevention Strategy (CRCPS). 2012/2015. *Crime Prevention Strategy*. Ministry of the Interior: Czech Republic.
- Czech Republic Crime Prevention Strategy (CRCPS). 2008/2011. *Crime Prevention Strategy*. Ministry of the Interior: Czech Republic.
- Daniel, J. 2012. *Sampling Essential: Practical Guidelines for Making Sampling Choices*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Delamont, S. 2012. *Handbook of Qualitative research in Education*. UK: Servis Filmsetting Ltd.
- De Lisi, M. & Vaughn, M.C. 2015. *The Routledge International Handbook of Biosocial Criminology*. New York: Routledge.
- Denscombe, M. 2010. *Ground Rules for good Research. Guidelines for Good Practice*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: Open University.
- Denscombe, M. 2012. *Ground Rules for good Research. 10 Point Guide for Social Researchers*. London: Open University.
- Downes, D. 2016. *Unravelling Criminal Justice: Eleven British Studies*. London: Springer.
- Dutelle, A.W. 2014. *An Introduction to Crime Scene Investigation*. 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. Burlington: Jones and Barlett Learning.
- Duff, A., Farmer, L., Marshall, S.E., Renzo, M. & Tadros, V. 2010. *The Boundaries of the Criminal Law*. New York: Oxford University Press.

- Du Plooy-Cilliers, F., Davis, C. & Bezuidenhout, M. 2014. *Research Matters*. South Africa: JUTA.
- Dvoskin, J.A., Skeem, J.L. & Novaco, R.W. 2012. *Using Social Science to Reduce Violent Offending*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Ekblom, P. 2011. *Crime Prevention Security and Community Safety Using the 5 I's Framework*. UK: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Emsley, C. 2016. *The History of Policing: Theories and Origins of the Modern Police*. New York: Routledge.
- Farrall, S., Goldson, B., Loader, I. & Dockley, A. 2016. *Justice and Penal Reform: Re-shaping the Panel Landscape*. New York: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group.
- Faulkner, D., Burneff, R. & Towl, G. 2012. *Where Next for Criminal Justice*. UK: Policy Press.
- Fennelly, L.J. 2012. *Handbook of Loss Prevention and Crime Prevention*. 5<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: Elsevier.
- Fisher, B.S. & Lab, S.P. 2010. *Encyclopaedia of Victimology and Crime Prevention*, Volume 1. USA: SAGE.
- Flick, U. 2014. *The SAGE Handbook of Qualitative Analysis*. London: SAGE.
- Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. Writing the research proposal. In De Vos, A.S.L, Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011 *Research at Grassroots: For the social sciences and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. Formal formulations. In De Vos, A.S.L, Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011 *Research at Grassroots: For the social sciences and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Fraser, J. 2011. *Rural Crime Prevention a Literature Review*. Ottawa: University of Ottawa.
- Gaines, H.K. & Kappeler, V.E. 2010. *Police America*. 6<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: Anderson Publication.
- Gibson, V. McCube, M. & Johnson, D. 2013. *CPTED, But Not As We Know It: Investigation the Impact of Conflicting Frameworks and Terminology in Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design*. UK: Northumbria University.
- Goodwin, J. 2012. *SAGE Secondary Data Analysis*. London. SAGE.

Google Map Data. 2015.

<https://www.google.co.za/maps/dir/Wonderboom+Aerodrome,+Linvelt+Road,+Pretoria,+0110/Dequar+Military+Police,+No.1+Artillery+Road,+Pretoria,+0001/Thaba+Tshwane+Military+Police+Office,+Paul+Kruger,+Centurion/Waterkloof+Airforce+Base,+Centurion,+Gauteng/Defence+Military+Police+Division,+138+Pieter+Street,+Pretoria,+0186/Thaba+Tshwane,+Centurion,+0187/@-25.7663044,28.0396097,43520m/data>. (Accessed 18 August 2016).

Goold, B. & Zedner, L. 2006. *Crime and Security*. New York. Routledge.

Grant, H. 2015. *Social Crime Prevention in the Developing World: Exploring the Role*. New York: Springer.

Grant, L. 2011. *What is Crime?* University of Portsmouth: GRIN Publishing.

Gravetter, F.J. & Forzano, L.B. 2012. *Research Methods for the Behavioral Sciences*. Wadsworth: CENGAGE Learning.

Gray, D.E. 2009. *Doing Research in the real world*. Los Angeles: SAGE.

Gray, D.E. 2014. *Doing Research in the real world*. Los Angeles: SAGE.

Greeff, M. 2011. Information collection: Interviewing. 2011. In De Vos , A.S., Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. *Research at grassroots: For the social science and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schalk.

Guzman, M.C.D., Das, A.M. & Das, D.K. 2014. *The Evolution of Policing: World Wide Innovations and Insights*. New York: CRC Press.

Guest, G., Namey, E.E. & Mitchell, M.L. 2013. *Collecting Qualitative Data: A Field Manual for Applied Research*. London: SAGE.

Harper, D. 2011. *Choosing a Qualitative Research Method*. From: [Core.ac.uk/download/pdf/10809819.Pdf](http://Core.ac.uk/download/pdf/10809819.Pdf). (Accessed 12 May 2015).

Harris, P.D. 2006. *Crime Prevention and Theory*. USA: Virginia Crime Prevention Association. From: <https://www.ojp.usdoj.gov/bjs/flowchart.pdf>. (Accessed 17 June 2017).

Hart, M.A. 2010. *Indigenous Worldview Knowledge and Research: The Development of Research Paradigm*. 1 February. From: <https://ahrnerts.ca/.../Indegenous%20Worldviews,%20knowledge,%20and%20research.pdf>. (Accessed 04 June 2015).

Hennink, M.M. 2014. *Focus Group Discussions: Understanding Qualitative Research*. New York: Oxford University Press.

- Hill, C.W.L., Schilling, M.A. & Jones, G.R. 2017. *12e Strategic Management Theory: An Integrated Approach*. Boston: Cengage Learning.
- Hill, B. & Paynich, R. 2014. *Fundamental of the Mapping*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. USA: Jones and Bartell Learning.
- Homel, R. 2005. *Developmental Crime Prevention*. UK: Willan Publishing.
- International Centre for the Prevention of Crime (ICPC). 2007. *Proceedings of the Workshop Held at the 11<sup>th</sup> UN Congress on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice*. Canada: International Centre for the Prevention of Crime.
- International Centre for the Prevention of Crime (ICPC). 2008. *International report crime prevention and community safety: Trends and perspective*. Canada: International Centre for the Prevention of Crime
- International Centre for the Prevention of Crime (ICPC). 2010. *International report crime prevention and community safety: Trends and perspective*. Canada: International Centre for the Prevention of Crime.
- Jesson, J.K., Matheson, L. & Lacey, F.M. 2011. *Doing Your Literature Review. Traditional and Systematic Techniques*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Jones, I., Brown, L. & Holloway, I. 2013. *Qualitative Research in Sport and Physical Activity*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Joubert, C. 2010. *Applied Law for Police Officials*. 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. Claremont: Juta.
- Joyce, P. 2013. *Criminal Justice: An Introduction*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. New York: Routledge.
- Karn, J. 2013. *Policing and Crime Reduction*. London: Police-Foundation. From: <https://www.police-foundation.org.uk/uploads/holding/...policing-and-crime-reduction.pdf>. (Accessed 12 April 2017).
- Kaufman, R. P. 2016. *Horror Revenge: A Theory of Punishment*. Whitley: Springer.
- Khalifa, A.W. 2013. *Translators Have their Say? Translation and Power of Agency*. Karl-Franzens-University Graz: Centre for Translation studies.
- Kingston, S. 2014. *Prostitution in the Community, Attitudes, Action and Resistance*. New York: Routledge.
- Kirkpatrick, S.A. 2016. *Build a Better Vision Statement: Extending Research with Practical Advice*. London: Lexington Books.
- Kruger, T., Lancaster, L., Landman, K., Liebermann, S., Louw, A. & Robertshaw, R. 2016. *Making South Africa Safe: A manual for community-based crime prevention*. Pretoria: National Crime Prevention Centre.



- Kumar, R. 2014. *Research Methodology: A Step-by-Step Guide for Beginners*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Lab, S.P. 2010. *Crime Prevention, Approaches, Practices and Evaluations*. 7<sup>th</sup> Edition. Bowling Green State University: Anderson Publishing.
- Lab, S.P. 2014. *Crime Prevention, Approaches, Practices and Evaluations*. USA: Anderson Publishing.
- Leclerc, B. & Savona, E.U. 2017. *Crime Prevention in the 21<sup>st</sup> Century: Insightful Approaches for Crime Prevention Initiative*. Switzerland: Springer.
- Levers, M.D. 2013. *Philosophical Paradigms Grounded, Theory and Perspective on Emergence*. University of Calgary-Qatar: SAGE. From: <https://www.sgo.sagepub.com/content/spsgo/3/4/2158244013517243.full.pdf>. (Accessed 13 December 2013).
- Livingstone, I. 2015. *Police Scotland Keeping People Safe: Crime Prevention Strategy Scotland Crime and Operational Support*. UK: Scotland. From: <https://www.scotland.police.uk/asset/pdf/138327/150739/police-scotland-crime-prevention-strategy?view=standard.pdf>. (Accessed 20 January 2017).
- Loseke, D.R. 2013. *Methodological Thinking: Basic Principles of Social Research Design*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Mabanga, X. Defence Media Liaison. 2015. *Statement to author 23 April*. Pretoria. Department of Defence.
- Mackey, D.A. & Levan, K. 2013. *Crime Prevention*. USA: JB Learning.
- Major, C.H. & Savin-Baden, M. 2010. *An Introduction to Qualitative Research Synthesis: Managing the Information*. USA: Routledge.
- Marshall, C. & Rossman, G.B. 2011. *Designing Qualitative Research*. 5<sup>th</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Marzbali, M.H. Abdull, A. Razak, N.A. and Tilaki, A. 2011. *Journal of Sustainable development: A Review of the Effectiveness of Crime Prevention by Design Approaches Towards Sustainable Development*. Volume 4. Number 1. Malaysia: Canadian Centre of Science and Education. From: <https://www.ccsent.org/jsd.pdf>. (Accessed 01 June 2018).
- Materni, M.C. 2013. *Criminal Punishment and Pursuit of Justice*. Cambridge: Harvard Law School.

- Mathebula, E.M. 2014. Prevention of Theft of Official Vehicles South African National Defence Force (SANDF) in the Gauteng Province. MA Dissertation. Pretoria: UNISA.
- Maxwell, J. 2013. *Qualitative Research Design: An Interactive Approach*. 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Military Police Agency. 2001. *The Military Police Agency Instruction 12/00*. 1<sup>st</sup> Edition. Pretoria. Military Police Agency.
- Military Police Agency. 2002. *The Military Police Strategy*. 1<sup>st</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Military Police Agency.
- Military Police Agency. 2007. *The Military Police Agency Instruction 12/00: Crime prevention guidelines and procedures*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. Pretoria. Military Police Agency.
- Military Police Agency. 2007. *The Desk of the Provost marshal General: Crime Report for the Financial Year 2006/2007*. Pretoria: Military Police Division. From: <http://www.dod.org.pdf>. (Accessed 12 February 2015).
- Military Police Division. 2014. *The Military Police Instruction 21/00: Military Police Identification Card*. Pretoria: Military Police Division.
- Military Police Division. 2015. *Crime Report Financial Year 2014/2015*. Pretoria: Military Police Division.
- Miller, L.S., Hess, K.M. & Orthmann, C.H. 2011. *Community Policing: Partnerships for Problem Solving*. USA: CENGAGE Learning.
- Montesh, M. & Basdoe, V. 2012. The Role of the South African National Defence Force in Policing. *South African Journal of Military Studies*, 4(1):71 -79.
- Morgan, A., Boxall, H., Lindeman, K. & Anderson, J. 2002. Effective Crime Prevention Intervention for Implementation by Local Government: AIC Reports Research and Public Policy Series 120. Australia: Australian Institute of Criminology.
- MPAI see Military Police Agency
- Muratovski, G. 2016. *Research for Designers: A Guide to Methods and Practice*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Nalla, M. & Newman, G.R. 2013. *Community Policing in Indigenous Communities*. New York: CRC Press.
- National Crime Prevention Strategy see South Africa. Interdepartmental Strategy Team. 1996.

- National Police Directorate of Norway. 2008. *The Role of the Police in Crime Prevention*. Seventh Annual Colloquium Oslo. Canada: International Centre for the Prevention of Crime. 2007. Canada. From: <http://www.crimeprevention-intl.org/fileadmin/user-upload/Publications/The-role-of-the-police-in-crime-prevention-ANG.pdf>. (Accessed 05 August 2017).
- Nawz, A. 2012. *Social – Constructivism: Futuristic Sphere for E-Learning in HELs*. 01 May 2012. From: <http://globaljournal.org/GJMBR-Volume12/3-Social-Constructivism-futuristic-Sphere.pdf>. (Accessed 16 August 2015).
- Nelson, L., Groom, R. & Potrac, P. 2014. *Research Methods in Sports Coaching*. London: SAGE.
- Newburn, T. & Neyroud, P. 2013. *Dictionary of Policing*. New York: Routledge.
- Ocean Editorial Board. 2010. *CTIA: Consolidated Treaties and International Agreement 2009 Vol 2 Issued*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Okeke, I.R. & Shah, M.H. 2016. *Information theft Prevention: Theory and Practice*. New York: Routledge.
- Olsen, D.A. 2014. *CC310 Crime Prevention through Property: a Nebraska Property ID System*. University of Nebraska: Lincoln Extension.
- O'Malley, P. & Sutton, A. 1997. *Crime in Australia Issue in Policy and research*. Australia: Federation Press.
- Omar, B. 2010. *Enforcement or development? Positioning Government National Crime Prevention Strategy*. CJCP Issue Paper 9. Cape Town: Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.
- Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. 2010. s.v. "role." 8<sup>th</sup> edition New York: Oxford University Press.
- Peck, R. & Devore, J. 2012. *Statistics: The exploration and Analysis of Data*. 7<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: CENGAGE Learning.
- Pheiffer, D.C. 2013. *An Analysis of the Role of the South African Police Service and the Local Government in Crime Prevention*. PhD Thesis. Pretoria: UNISA.
- Presidential Commission for the Study of Bioethical Issues (PCSBi). 2016. *Anticipate and Communicate: Ethical Management of Incidental and Secondary Findings in the Clinical Research and Direct-to-Consumer Contexts*. Washington D.C: PCSBi. From: <http://www.bioethicsarchive,georgetown.edu/pcbi/sites/default/files/Research%20Primer%20Findings%2010.30.16.pdf>. (Accessed 03 June 2018).

- Public Service see South Africa. 1994.
- Queensland Police Service. 2007. *Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design: Guidelines for Queensland. Part A: Essential Features of Safer Places*. Queensland: Department of Infrastructure and Planning and Queensland Police Service.
- Ravitch, S.M. & Riggan, M. 2012. *Reason and Rigor: How Conceptual Framework Guide Research*. Los Angeles: SAGE.
- Ritchie, J., Lewis, J., McNaughton, C. & Ormston, N.R. 2014. *Qualitative Research Practice: A Guide for Social Science Students and Research*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Rivero, D.A. 2010. The Police Chief: Proactive Patrolling Through the use of Patrol Scripts. 20 September. From: <https://umshare.miami.edu/web/wda/umpolice/.../oliceChiefMagazinesept.pdf>. (Accessed 29 January 2017).
- Rogers, C. 2012. *Crime Reduction Partnerships*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. UK: Oxford University Press.
- Rosner, R. & Scott, C.C. 2017. *Principles and Practise of Forensic Psychiatry*. 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition. New York: CRC Press.
- Rowe, M. 2008. *Introduction to Policing*. London: SAGE.
- Schlitz, M. M., Vieten, C. & Miller, E.M. 2010. *Worldview Transformation and the Development of Social Consciousness*. 18 July. From: <https://media.noetic.org/uploads/files/JCS-17-7-8-018-036.pdf>. (Accessed 16 August 2015).
- Schneider, S. 2010. *Crime Prevention, Theory and Practice*. New York: CRC Press.
- Schneider, S. 2015. *Crime Prevention, Theory and Practice*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: CRC Press.
- Sennewald, C.A. & Christman, J.H. 2008. *Retail Crime Prevention: An Encyclopaedic Reference*. USA: Elsevier.
- Sharma, S.K. 2014. *Nursing Research and statistics*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. India: Elsevier.
- Sheperis, C.J., Young, J.S. & Daniels, M.H. 2010. *Counseling Research Quantitative, Qualitative and Mixed Methods*. 1<sup>st</sup> Edition. New Jersey: Pearson Educational Inc.
- Siegel, L.J. 2016. *Criminology: The Core*. 6<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: Cengage Learning.
- Silverman, D. 2011. *Interpreting Qualitative Data: A Guide to the Principles of Qualitative Research*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. London: SAGE.
- Simsek, A. 2011. *Ogretme Tasarim Instructional Design*. Ankara: Nobel.

- Singh, A. 2008. *Policing and Crime Control in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. New York: Routledge Taylor Francis Group.
- Singh, C. 2014. *Beginning Evidence*. London: Routledge.
- Singh, A. 2016. *Policing and Crime Control in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
- Skinns, D. 2016. Coalition Government Penal Policy 2010 -2015: Austerity out Source and punishment. London: Macmillan Publishers.
- South Africa. 1996. Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 108 of 1996. Pretoria: Government Printers. From: <http://www.gov.za/documents/constitution/1996.pdf>. (Accessed 27 April 2017).
- South Africa. 1997. *Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. 2002. *Defence Act 42 of 2002*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. Department of Defence and Military Veterans. 1998. *Defence Review*. Pretoria. From <http://www.dod.mil.za/publications.pdf> (Accessed 28 June 2017).
- South Africa. Department of Defence and Military Veterans. 2013. *Annual Report Financial 2012/2013*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. Department of Safety and Security. 1998. *White Paper on Safety and Security*. "In service of safety": 1998-2003. Pretoria. From: <http://www.policesecretariat.gov.za/downloads/white-paper-security.pdf>. (Accessed 10 March 2017).
- South Africa. Department of Safety and Security 2013. *Green Paper on Policing*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. Department of Safety and Security. 2015. *1 Draft White paper on the police*. Pretoria. South Africa: Government Printers.
- South Africa. Department of Social Development. 2011. *Integrated Social Crime Prevention Strategy*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. Inter-departmental Strategy Team. 1996. *National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS)*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa. 1957. *Military discipline Code Act 44 of 1957*. Pretoria: Government Printers.
- South Africa, National Development Plan 2030. 2012. *Our Future: Make it Work*. Pretoria: National Planning Commission. From:

<http://.poa.gov.za/news/Documents/NPC%20National%20On%20Vision%202030%20-10-res.pdf>. (Accessed 10 August 2016).

South Africa. 1994. Public Service Act 103 of 1994: As Amended by Act 30 of 2007. Pretoria. Government Printers.

South African Police Service. Department of Community Safety: Research Report. 2013. *The Implementation of Sector Policing in Hillbrow*. Gauteng: Policy and Research Directorate.

South African Police Services. 2003. *Draft National Instruction Sector Policing*. Pretoria: Commissioner of the Police.

South African Police Services. 2006. *Learning Area 5: Crime Prevention*. Divisional Training: Pretoria.

South Africa Police Service. 2010. Strategic Plan 2010 – 2014. Pretoria: Government Printers.

South African Police Services. 2011/2012. *Annual Report*. South African Police Services. Pretoria.

South African Police Services. 2015. *Implementation of Sector Policing Operational Guide: Sector Commanders and Members*. Pretoria: Government Printers.

South African Police Services. 2010-2014. *The Strategic Plan*. Pretoria: Government Printers.

Spalek, B. 2013. *Terror Crime Prevention with Community*. New York: Bloomsbury.

Steinberg, R.A. 2014. *Implementing IT SM: Silos to Service: Transforming the IT Organisation*. USA: Trafford.

Strydom, H. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. Information collection: document study and secondary analysis. In De Vos, A.S., Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. *Research at grass root: For the social science and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schalk.

Strydom, H. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. Sampling and pilot study in qualitative research. In De Vos, A.S., Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. *Research at grass root: For the social science and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schalk.

Strydom, H. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. Sampling in the quantitative research. In De Vos, A.S., Strydom, H., Fouche, C.B. & Delport, C.S.L. 2011. *Research at grass root: For the social science and human service professions*. 4<sup>th</sup> Edition. Pretoria: Van Schalk.

- Sutton, A., Cherney, A. & White, R. 2008. *Crime Prevention, Principles, perspectives and Practices*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Sutton, A., Cherney, A. & White, R. 2014. *Crime Prevention, Principles, perspectives and Practices*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Teasdale, B. & Bradley, M.S. 2017. *Preventing Crime Violence*. Switzerland: Springer.
- Thomas, J.R., Nelson, J.K. & Silverman, S.J. 2011. *Research Methods in Physical Activity*. 6<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: Human Kinetics.
- Tilley, N. & Sidebottom, A. 2017. *Handbook of Crime Prevention and Community Safety*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. New York: Routledge.
- Thyer, B.A. 2010. *The Handbook of Social Work Research Methods*. London: SAGE.
- Torigian, M.A. 2009. *Crime Prevention in Ontario: A Framework for Action*. Ontario: Association of Chiefs of Police.
- Uglow, S. 2006. *Evidence: Text and Materials*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition. London: Sweet and Maxwell.
- United Nations Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice. 2002. Guidelines for the Prevention of crime. *ECOSOC: Report on the 11<sup>th</sup> session*. Geneva: United Nations.
- United Nations Human and Settlements Programme. 2007. *Enhancing Urban Safety and Security: Global Report on Human Settlements*. UK: Earthscan.
- United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC). 2008. *Handbook on Planning and Action for Crime Prevention in Southern African and the Caribbean Regions*. Criminal Justice Handbook Series. Vienna: United Nations.
- United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC). 2010. *Handbook on the Prevention: Making them work*. Vienna: United Nations.
- United State Congressional Record. 2009. *Congressional Record Proceeding and Debates of the 11 Congress First Session*. Volume 155. 21 July 2009 – 28 July 2009. From: <http://books.google.co.za/books?id=H5Ch8Mj2xiyc&pg=PA18779&d.pdf>. (Accessed 29 June 2017).
- United State. 2004. *The Professional Bulletin of the Military Police Corps*. Washington D.C. US: Government Printing Office.
- University of South Africa. 2007. *Policy on research ethics*. UNISA: Pretoria. From: [http://researchethicspolicy\\_apprcounc\\_21sept07.pdf](http://researchethicspolicy_apprcounc_21sept07.pdf). (Accessed 29 July 2016).

- Vaessen, J. & Leeuw, F.L. 2017. *Mind on Gap: Perspectives on Policy Evaluation and Social Sciences*. Vol 16. New York: Routledge.
- Wales, J. 2014. Writing Better University Essays/Defining Key Terms 23 August from [http://wikibooksorg/wiki/writing\\_better\\_University\\_essays/defining\\_key\\_terms.pdf](http://wikibooksorg/wiki/writing_better_University_essays/defining_key_terms.pdf). (Accessed 03 Oct 15).
- Weber, L. 2013. *Policing Non-Citizens*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Weisburd, D., Farrington, D.P. & Gill, C. 2016. *What Works in Crime Prevention and Rehabilitation: Lesson from Systematic*. New York: Springer.
- Welsh, B.C. & Farrington, D.P. 2009. *Making Public Places Safer: Surveillance and Crime Prevention*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Welsh, B.C. & Farrington, D.P. 2010. *The Future of Crime Prevention: Development and Situational Strategy*. Maryland: National Institute of Justice. From <http://www.aic.gov.au>. (Accessed 05 April 2016).
- Welsh, B.C. & Farrington, D.P. 2011. *Crime Prevention*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Welsh, B.C. & Farrington, D.P. 2012. *The Future of Crime Prevention: Developmental and Situational Strategies*. USA: Cambridge University.
- Welsh, B.C. Farrington, D.P. & O'Dell, S.J. 2010. *Effective of Public Area Surveillance for Crime prevention: Security Guard, Place Managers and Defensible Space*. Sweden: Swedish National Council for Crime Prevention.
- White Paper on Safety and Security see South Africa. 1998.
- Wimmer, R. D. & Dommick, J.R. 2011. *Mass Media Research: An Introduction*. 9<sup>th</sup> Edition. USA: CENGAGE Learning.
- Winter, R.C., Globokar, J.L. & Roberson, C. 2014. *An Introduction to Crime and Crime Causation*. New York: CRC Press.
- Winterdyk, J.A. 2017. *Crime Prevention: International Perspectives, Issues and Trends*. USA: CRC LLC.
- World Health Organisation. 2012. *Who Handbook for Guideline Development*. Geneva: United Nations. From: [http://appswho.int/iris/bitstream110665/75146/1/9789241548441\\_eng.pdf](http://appswho.int/iris/bitstream110665/75146/1/9789241548441_eng.pdf). (Accessed 8 June 2017).
- Wood, M.J. & Ross-Kerr, J.C. 2011. *Basic Steps in Planning Nursing Research from Question to Proposal*. 7<sup>rd</sup> Edition. Canada: Jones and Bartlet Publishers. LLG.



- Zhao, R. & Liu J. 2011. *A System's Approach to Crime Prevention: Case of Macao*. Macao: Springer.
- Zhong, L. 2013. *Communities, Crime Social Capital in Contemporary China*. New York: Routledge.
- Zinn, R. & Dintwe, S. 2016. *Forensic Investigative: Legislative Practices*. 1<sup>st</sup> Edition. South Africa: JUTA.

## **7. ANNEXURES**

### **6.1 ANNEXURE A: INTERVIEW SCHEDULE**

PARTICIPANT NUMBER

**TOPIC: A CRITICAL ANALYSIS OF THE ROLE OF THE MILITARY POLICE IN CRIME PREVENTION**

AIM: To determine how the Military Police should prevent crime within the proclaimed military area.

#### **RESEARCH QUESTIONS:**

- What does crime prevention entail?
- What does the MPAI 12/00 entail as far as crime prevention is concerned?
- How should the military police prevent crime?

You are kindly requested to assist the researcher by answering the following questions listed in this interview schedule. The questions, responses and results will be revealed to the participant only, and not to the participant's manager/supervisor.

Identity, privacy and confidentiality of information will be maintained throughout the study, and no other person will have access to the interview data. The researcher will ensure that subjects are treated equally and with respect, regardless of their socio-economic status, or whether they are illiterate or learned. The subjects of the research will remain anonymous. The information provided by the subjects will be used only in a research project for a Master of Technology degree registered with the Programme Group: Police Practice, at the University of South Africa. The analysed and processed data will be published in a research report.

Your answers will be recorded by the interviewer himself, i.e. written down on paper and by means of a Dictaphone. Should any question be unclear, please ask the researcher for clarification. Only one answer per question is required. When answering the questions, it is very important to give your own opinion.

Written permission to conduct the interview was obtained in advance from the Military Police Division.

### **PERMISSION BY PARTICIPANT**

I hereby give permission to be interviewed and agree that the information supplied by me may be used in this research.

Encircle

☒

### **SECTION A: BACKGROUND INFORMATION**

ANNEXURE, SAMPLES A., B., C. AND D.

A.1 Where are you stationed/ working?

A.2 How long have you been working in the Military Police at Military Police Division?

A.3 Are you working in the crime prevention section of the Military Police?

A.4 For how long have you been working in the crime prevention section of the Military Police?

A.5 Did you undergo any training in crime prevention?

A.6 Did you undergo any advanced training in crime prevention?

A.7 When did you attend formal crime prevention training?

**SECTION B: WHAT DOES CRIME PREVENTION ENTAIL?**

Question B.1: What is crime?

Answer B.1:

Question B.2: What are the causes of crime?

Answer B.2:

Question B.3: In your opinion, what is the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS)?

Answer B.3:

Question B.4: What is the meaning of crime prevention?

Answer B.4:

Question B.5: What is crime control?

Answer B.5:

Question B.6: What is proactive crime prevention?

Answer B.6:

Question B.7: What is your understanding of the word 'reactive' crime prevention?

Answer B. 7:

Question B.8: Explain the principles of crime prevention.

Answer B.8:

Question B.9: What is the meaning of 'primary prevention'?

Answer B.9:

Question B.10: What is the meaning of 'secondary prevention'?

Answer B.10:

Question B.12: Explain tertiary prevention.

Answer B.12:

Question B.13: What is environmental crime prevention?

Answer B.13:

Question B.14: Explain the principles of environmental crime prevention.

Answer B.14:

Question B.15: What would you suggest as a deterrent to stop crime opportunities that would be effective in the eyes of the public?

Answer B.15:

Question B.16: Explain the meaning of social crime prevention.

Answer B.16:

Question B.17: What is developmental crime prevention?

Answer B.17:

Question B.18: Who are the role-players in crime prevention?

Answer B.18:

Question B.19: What is meant by 'crime prevention mechanism'?

Answer B.19:

## **SECTION C: WHAT DOES MPAI 12/00 ENTAIL?**

Question C.1: What is the mission statement of the Military Police Division regarding crime prevention?

Answer C.1:

Question C.2: What is the MPAI 12/00?

Answer C.2:

Question C.3: What does the MPAI 12/00 entail?

Answer C.3:

Question C.4: Is the MPAI 12/00 clear about the preventive action? (Motivate your answer).

Answer C. 4:

Question C.5: How does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention?

Answer C.5:

Question C.6: Does the MPAI 12/00 define crime prevention from a proactive point of view?

Answer C.6:

Question C.7: What does the constitution of South Africa (1996) require from you as a member of the SANDF regarding crime prevention?

Answer C.7:

Question C.8: Is the MPAI 12/00 consistent with the Constitution? (Motivate your answer).

Answer C.8:

Question C.9: Does the MPAI 12/00 address the requirements as stipulated in Section 31(1) of the Defence Act 42 of 2002?

Answer C.9:

Question C.10: What are the primary objectives of the Military Police regarding crime prevention?

Answer C.10:

Question C.11: Is there a link between the aim of the MPAI 12/00 and that of the NCPS?

Answer C.11:

Question C.12: Is the vision of the Military Police Division in line with the vision statement of the NCPS with regard to crime prevention?

Answer C.12:

Question C.13: Does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?

Answer C.13:

Question C.14: How does the NCPS involve the Military Police in crime prevention?

Answer C.14:

Question C.15: Is the information contained in the MPAl 12/00 relevant to the current requirements of the new democratic policing style or philosophy?

Answer C.15:

Question C.16: Is the MPAl 12/00 relevant to crime prevention? (Motivate your answer).

Answer C.16:

Question C.17: To what extent does the HQ of the MP Division involve you to give inputs when the MPAl 12/00 is revised?

Answer C.17:

#### **SECTION D: CRIME PREVENTED BY THE MILITARY POLICE.**

Question D.1: What are the functions of the Military Police, according to the Defence Act?

Answer D.1:

Question D.2: Does the Military Police have authority over civilians staying in your proclaimed area?

Answer D.2:

Question D.3: In your opinion, what is your role as a member of the Military Police in crime prevention in your proclaimed areas?

Answer D.3:

Question D.4: In your opinion, do you think the role of the Military Police in crime prevention should be revised? (Motivate your answer).

Answer D.4:

Question D.5: What is the importance of the Military Police crime prevention section within the military environment?

Answer D.5:

Question D.6: Do you think the approach of the current Military Police crime prevention section contributes towards making your proclaimed area a safer environment? (Motivate your answer).

Answer D.6:

Question D.7: What is the definition of visible policing?

Answer D.7:

Question D.8: Do you think Military Police must engage in visible policing?

Answer D.8:

Question D.9: What does visible policing entail?

Answer D.9:

Question D.10: What is sector policing?

Answer D. 10:

Question D.11: How can the Military Police become involved in sector policing?

Answer D.11:

Question D.12: In your opinion, what crime prevention actions would suit the Military Police's crime prevention strategy in your proclaimed areas?

Answer D.12:

Question D.13: What is the importance of engaging the community and other stakeholders in crime prevention within your proclaimed military environment?

Answer D.13:

Question D.14: What does community involvement mean to you?

Answer D.14:



Question D.15: How do you interact with the community in your proclaimed area regarding crime prevention?

Answer D.15:

Question D.16: What do you think the Military Police must do in order to attain sustainability in crime prevention?

Answer D.16:

Question D.17: What do you suggest can be done to strengthen the efforts of the Military Police crime prevention section in you proclaimed area?

Answer D.17:

Question D.18: What is the status of your crime prevention equipment?

Answer D.18:

Question D.19: Name the crime prevention strategies do you use as an intervention strategy to fight crime in your proclaimed areas?

Answer D.19:

Question D.20: What is situational crime prevention?

Answer D.20:

Question D.21: How can the Military Police become involved in situational crime prevention?

Answer D.21:

Question D.22: How does the South African Police Service-oriented training that you received at the Military Police School influence your daily functioning in crime prevention?

Answer D.22:

Question D.23: What advantages does the South African Police Service-oriented training have to the Military Police crime prevention section?


Answer D.23:

## 6.2

### ANNEXURE B: AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT A RESEARCH IN THE MILITARY POLICE DIVISION

RESTRICTED

Cell number: 072 525 8211  
Facsimile: (012) 674-4100  
Enquiries: Maj L. Xobiso

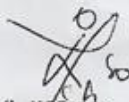


MP SCHOOL/R/102/1/2

Military Police School  
Private Bag x1010  
Thaba Tshwane  
0143  
19 August 2015

**AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT A RESEARCH IN THE MILITARY POLICE DIVISION (MPD): MAJ L. XOBISO (MAGISTER TECHNOLOGIA IN POLICING)**

1. I hereby request permission to conduct a research as part of my studies for the Magister Technologia in Policing with the University of South Africa. The title of my research proposal is 'The role of Military Police in crime prevention within Gauteng Province'.
2. Crime within the Soldiers and Civilian Community is dominant. The community living within the soldiers environment do not know the role of the Military Police in crime even soldiers themselves are confused over this matter.
3. For my Baccalaureus Technologic (Btech), I did a research on: **THE IMPORTANCE OF THE LATENT FINGER PRINT FOUND AT THE CRIME SCENE.** The findings of my study revealed that most of the cases are thrown out of the court because police official neglected such evidence.
4. This research will not have any derogatory statements towards other human beings (military personnel and civilians) and it will not contain any material that may harm any individual either physical or emotional.
5. My supervisor for the duration of the research is Dr J.S. Horne. Contact details: 0845827829 / 012 4339415
6. Your cooperation will be appreciated.

  
 (L. XOBISO)  
 INVESTIGATION BRANCH COMMANDER: MAJ

RESTRICTED

RESTRICTED

2

**AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT A RESEARCH IN THE MILITARY POLICE DIVISION  
(MPD): MAJ L. XOBISO (MAGISTER TECHNOLOGIA IN POLICING)**

Recommendations by the Provost Marshal General

RESEARCH IS RECOMMENDED PROVIDED IT WILL  
NOT COMPROMISE THE SECURITY OF SANDF  
BUT BENEFIT IT

*[Signature]*

**(T.S. BUHALI)  
PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL: BRIG GEN**

Approved / Not Approved

Copy of such research must  
also be submitted to Def Int  
on completion, PMG to ensure that  
SANDF is not compromised. Best wishes  
on your research

*[Signature]*

**(J.M. NYEMBE)  
CHIEF DEFENCE INTELLIGENCE: LT GEN**

**DISTR**

For Action

SSO Provost Services


File: MP SCHOOL/R/102/1/2

RESTRICTED

### 6.3 ANNEXURE C: REQUEST TO CONDUCT INTERVIEWS

RESTRICTED

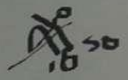
Cell number: 072 525 8211  
Facsimile: (012) 674-4100  
Email: shezileonard@yahoo.com  
Enquiries: Maj L. Xobiso



**MP SCHOOL/R/102/1/2**  
Military Police School  
Private Bag x1010  
Thaba Tshwane  
0143  
21 July 2016

**REQUEST AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT INTERVIEWS AT YOUR AREA OFFICES:  
MAJ L. XOBISO (MAGISTER TECHNOLOGIA IN POLICING)**

1. I hereby request to conduct interviews on crime prevention sections at Area Officer under Northern Military Police Region within the vicinity of Pretoria.
2. It will be my wish to conduct this interviews on the following dates if granted a slot on that day:
  - a. Thaba Tshwane – 01 August 2016.
  - b. Northern MP Region HQ – 02 August 2016.
  - c. AFB Waterkloof MP – 02 August 2016.
  - d. Wonderboom MP – 04 August 2016.
  - e. Dequar MP – 05 August 2016.
3. Your favourable consideration will be highly appreciated. Please find the permission letter signed by PMG.



(L. XOBISO)  
ETQA OFFICER MILITARY POLICE SCHOOL: MAJ

RESTRICTED


RESTRICTED

2

**REQUEST AUTHORITY TO CONDUCT INTERVIEW AT YOUR AREA OFFICES:  
MAJ L. XOBISO (MAGISTER TECHNOLOGIA IN POLICING)**

Recommendations by the Regional Provost Marshal

*Approved*

  
(J. VAN DER MERWE)  
REGIONAL PROVOST MARSHAL: LT COL

File: MP SCHOOL/R/102/1/2

RESTRICTED

## 6.4 ANNEXURE D: UNISA ETHICAL CLEARANCE CERTIFICATE



### COLLEGE OF LAW RESEARCH ETHICS REVIEW COMMITTEE

Date: 2017/01/31

Reference: ST 138/ 2016

Applicant: L Xobiso

Dear L Xobiso  
(Supervisor : Dr JS Horne)

#### DECISION: ETHICS APPROVAL

Name	L Xobiso
Proposal	The Critical analysis of the role of the military police in Crime Prevention
Qualification	Mtech Policing

Thank you for the application for research ethics clearance by the College of Law Research Ethics Review Committee for the above mentioned research. **Final approval is granted.**

*The application was reviewed in compliance with the Unisa Policy on Research Ethics.*

*The proposed research may now commence with the proviso that:*

1. *The researcher will ensure that the research project adheres to the values and principles expressed in the Unisa Policy on Research Ethics which can be found at the following website:*

*[http://www.unisa.ac.za/cmsys/staff/contents/departments/res\\_policies/docs/Policy\\_Research%20Ethics\\_rev%20app%20Council\\_22.06.2012.pdf](http://www.unisa.ac.za/cmsys/staff/contents/departments/res_policies/docs/Policy_Research%20Ethics_rev%20app%20Council_22.06.2012.pdf)*

2. *Any adverse circumstances arising in the undertaking of the research project that is relevant to the ethicality of the study, as well as changes in the methodology, should be communicated in writing to the College of Law Ethical Review Committee.*



Open Rubric

University of South Africa  
Preller Street, Muckleneuk Ridge, City of Tshwane  
PO Box 392, Unisa, 0003, South Africa  
[www.unisa.ac.za/law](http://www.unisa.ac.za/law)

*An amended application could be requested if there are substantial changes from the existing proposal, especially if those changes affect any of the study-related risks for the research participants*

3. *The researcher will ensure that the research project adheres to any applicable national legislation, professional codes of conduct, institutional guidelines and scientific standards relevant to the specific field of study.*

*Note:*

*The reference number (top right corner of this communique) should be clearly indicated on all forms of communication (e.g. Webmail, E-mail messages, letters) with the intended research participants, as well as with the URERC.*

Kind regards



PROF D GOVENDER  
CHAIR PERSON: RESEARCH ETHICS  
REVIEW COMMITTEE  
COLLEGE OF LAW



PROF R SONGCA  
EXECUTIVE DEAN:  
COLLEGE OF LAW

